

 **Hello!**

# English

Third **GRADE**

Secondary **SCHOOL**

English



**MR**

**M. A.**



مراجعة لا  
يخرج عنها  
امتحان

*Hello! Secondary Three (vocabulary in alphabetical order)*

absorb	يمتص	diver		lead (to)	يؤدي (إلى)
accuse	يتهم	download (v)	يحمل (على كمبيوتر)	leak (n)	تسريب، ينسرب
achieve	ينجز، يحقق	drought		lecturer	
achievement		drum		licence	
actions		e-book		lifestyle	نمط حياة
admit (confess)	يعترف، يقر	eclipse		lightning	
adventurous	( )	effective		liquid	
alike (adj)		employable	يجد وظيفه	mark (v)	يحدد، درجة
ambitious		employee		massive	هائل، ضخ
amnesia		employer		mature (student)	( )
amount		encourage	يشجع	merchant	
appearance	مظهر	encyclopedia		midday	وسط النهار
applicant	متقدم لوظيفه	engineering	هندسه	mission	مهمه
appreciate	يقدر	enrol (on/in)	يسجل اسمه ( )	mixture	خليط
argue for	يجادل من اجل	enthusiastic		module	وحدة (دراسيه)
assistant	ببإع، مساعد	envious		molten	منصهر
atom		escapism	تهرب	monument	
attachment		essay		mousetrap	مصيدة فئران
attend	يحضر	establish	يؤسس، يثبت	murder	يقتل، جريمة قتل
available		established	مشهور	neighbourhood	جيرة
avoid	يتجنب	event		northern	
banking	معامله بنكيه	evolve	يطور	nuclear	
bark (of a tree)	لحاء الشجر، ينبج	examine	يفحص	nursing	تمريض
base (n)		excavation		object (to + G.)	يعترض (على)
be in charge of		excitement		occasion	
biography	قصه حياة شخص	expression	تعبير	occur	يحدث
blackmail (v)	بيتر	extra		old-fashioned	موضة قديمه
bleach (v)	يبيض	extract (v)	يستخرج	paperback	
bully (v)	بلطجي، يرهب	fiancée	خطيبه	pearl	
cable car		fictional	خيالي	permanently	
calculate	يحسب	finance(s) (n)	ماليه	personal	
cancer		find out	يكشف	personality	شخصيه
cardboard		fireworks	العاب ناريه	personnel	شئون العاملين
carve	يحفر	flight	رحلة طيران	pharmacy	صيدليه
castle		fluent (in)	فصيح (في)	phenomenon	ظاهرة (غريبه)
cause (v)	يسبب، سبب	folk (music)		pioneer	
cave	كهف	force (v)	يجبر	pipe (v)	
CD-ROM		fossil (fuel)	( )	playwright	
celebrate	يحتفل	funeral		poison	
celebrity	شخص مشهور	gadget	اله، جهاز	position (n)	
chemistry	كيمياه	gain (v)	يكسب (شئ معنوي)	positioned	
civil servant		generate	يولد	positive	إيجابي
classics		geothermal	طاقه حراريه من الارض	power station	
cliff		geyser		press	الصحافه، يضغط
coal		gradually	تدرجيا	pressure	
colleague	زميل عمل	gravity	جاذبيه	process (n)	عملية
commit (a crime)	يرتكب (جريمه)	greed		procession	
commuter	مسافر للعمل يوميا	gymnastics		products	
competition		harden	يصلب	profession	مهنة
conscientious	يفعل ما يرضي ضميره	harmful		promotion	ترقيه
conventional	تقليدي	headquarters	مقر رئيسي	provide	يمد، يزود
conversation		historical	تاريخي	publication	
coronation	تتويج	human nature	طبيعه البشر	publicity	علنيه، ذبوع
correspondent		hydroelectric	كهرماني	publisher	
couple		ideal		qualified	موهل
cure (n)	يشفي، علاج	identity	هويه	rainfall	
currently	حاليا	illuminate	ينير	raise (v)	يرفع
custom	عادة جماعيه، جمرک	impressive	مثير	rays	
CV	السيرة الذاتية	imprisonment		recognise	يتعرف على
debate		in conflict		recuperate	يتعافي، يشفي
deduce	يستنتج	influential	دو تاثير	recycle	إعادة استخدام، تدوير
degree	شهادة جامعيه، درجة علميه	innocent		regard ....(as)	يعتبر
department	( )	inspector	مفتش، موجه	regularly	
depression	ركود، انهيار، اكتئاب	instrument	اله (موسيقية، علميه)	release (v)	يطلق، يخرج
develop	يطور	invasion		renewable	
diabetes		investment		non-renewable	غير متجدد
diameter	( )	invisible	غير مرني	respectable	
diesel	وقود الديزل	knock (v)	يطرق (على باب)	response	
distance		landmark	معلم، علامه مميزه	responsibility	مسئوليه
distinctive	متميز	launch (n)	يطلق، إطلاق (صاروخ)	result	نتيجه
district	حي، ضاحيه	law		retrain	يعيد التدريب

revenge	انتقام، ينتقم	sociable	treason	خيانته
rewarding		solo	treat (v)	يعامل، يعالج
ring (n)	خاتم، يرن	southern	tube	
role		specialise	turbine	توربين
roller		spin (v)	turpentine	الترينتئين (مزيل طلاء)
routine (n)	روتين	spoke (n)	ultraviolet rays	اشعه فوق البنفسجيه
rubber		spontaneous	unthinkable	غير معقول
sap	( )	spy	vary	يتنوع
scorpion		sting, stung	victim	ضحية
screen		storyteller	violin	
secret (adj)		style	waste	نفايات، يسرف
secret agent		suitable	wealthy	
shadow	ظل، خيال	suspect	weightless	عديم الوزن
shy		system	well-educated	متعلم جيدا
side effect		theory	well-organised	منظم جيدا
sight (n)		throw away	width	
similar	متشابه	toothpaste	will (n)	وصيه، إرادة
skill	مهارة	trainee	wind turbine	توربينات الرياح
soak	ينقع (في سائل)	transmitter	worthwhile	يستحق

### Functions

Unit one	Unit two	Unit three	Unit four	Unit five	Unit six
Agree and disagree	Show interest and surprise	Ask questions	Express opinions	Give advice	Give instructions
Unit seven	Unit eight	Unit nine	Unit ten	Unit eleven	Unit twelve
Guess and deduce information	Make and respond to suggestions	Ask for and give explanations	Express wishes and regrets	Offer to help	Express likes and dislikes
Unit thirteen	Unit fourteen	Unit fifteen	Unit sixteen	Unit seventeen	Unit eighteen
Ask for and give reasons	Give and respond to warnings	Talking about the future	Ask and answer personal questions	Persuading	Ask and answer interview questions

### First term situations

#### Unit 1

- a) Someone says that space exploration is too expensive. You agree and say why.  
**I (completely) agree. We should use the money to feed people.**
- b) Someone says that computers are a bad thing. You do not have the same opinion. Say why.  
**I don't agree. Computers make our work faster and easier.**
- c) One of your friends says he thinks walking in space would be very frightening. You think he's right. Say why.  
**I agree. If you made one small mistake you could be lost in space forever.**
- d) You hear someone say that all astronauts are very rich. You know this is not true. Say why.  
**That's (just) not true. I researched astronaut salaries on the internet.**

#### Unit 2

- a) Your friend has joined a reading group. You want to know the number of people in the group.  
**How many people are in your reading group?**
- b) Someone tells you that Anthony Hope wrote The Prisoner of Zenda in three months. You are very surprised by this.  
**Really? I didn't know that.**
- c) You are told that Anthony Hope paid for the publication of his first novel himself. Express how you feel about this.  
**That's interesting.**
- d) Someone tells you that Anthony Hope wrote more than 30 works of fiction altogether. You are interested but not surprised by this.  
**Is that right?**

#### Unit 3

- a) You are doing a survey about energy use in your town. You would like to ask someone some questions. Explain the situation.  
**Hello, I'm doing a survey about energy use in our town. Could I ask you some questions, please?**
- b) You want to know about a friend's energy-saving habits. What do you ask?  
**What do you do to save energy?/How do you save energy?**
- c) You hear someone use a word you do not understand. The word is hydroelectric. What do you ask?  
**What does 'hydroelectric' mean?/Could you explain (the word) 'hydroelectric', please?/Could you tell me what 'hydroelectric' means?**
- d) Someone asks you how you usually travel to school every day. How do you reply?  
**I usually go/travel by bus (metro)./I usually walk.**

#### Unit 4

- a) A friend asks for your opinion about modern novels.  
**In my opinion, modern novels are not as good as the classics.**
- b) Someone asks you what you were doing at six o'clock yesterday evening.  
**At 6 o'clock yesterday evening, I was finishing my homework.**
- c) Someone asks you what you think the best thing is about short stories. Give your opinion.

**I think the best thing about short stories is that things happen quickly.**

**d) A friend asks you what you used to read when you were five.**

**When I was five, I used to read a newspaper written especially for children.**

Unit 5

**a) A friend asks for your advice about keeping fit. Advise him.**

**If I were you, I'd go swimming every day.**

**b) You want some advice from a friend about how you can eat more healthily. What do you ask?**

**I'd like to eat more healthily. What do you think I should do?**

**c) A friend wants to meet new people, but he/she is very shy. Make a recommendation.**

**I think it'd be a good idea for you to join a sports club.**

**d) Ask your teacher for advice about how to do well in the next English test.**

**I'd like to do well in the next English test. What do you think I should do?**

Review B

**a) A friend asks you your opinion about the importance of the rainforests. Say what you think.**

**In my opinion, the rainforests are very important for the future of the earth.**

**b) A friend who has never visited your country asks for your advice about places to see in Egypt.**

**If you ask me, / I think you should visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx.**

**c) A friend from another country wants to phone someone from a public phone in Egypt. He/She has never done this before. Tell him/her what to do first.**

**First of all, pick up the telephone, insert a coin, and wait until you hear a high noise. Then dial a number.**

**d) Someone asks you what you think about films which have been made from books.**

**In my opinion, / I think films are usually more interesting than books.**

Unit 7

**a) Why is everyone putting their umbrellas up?**

**It must have started raining.**

**b) Leila took her driving test yesterday. Now she's looking very unhappy.**

**She must have failed (her driving test). / She can't have passed her driving test.**

**c) My friend told me the homework was on page 41, but there isn't a page 41.**

**He/She must have made a mistake / told me the wrong page number. / It can't be the right page.**

**d) Karim thought he had shut the gate to the field, but now the goats are all in the road.**

**He must have left the gate open. / He can't have shut the gate.**

Unit 8

**a) A friend asks you whether you would like to go somewhere together at the weekend.**

**What about going to the beach?**

**b) The same friend does not want to go the beach, but suggests the swimming pool.**

**OK, then let's go to the swimming pool.**

**c) A friend suggests that you join a book club together. You do not want to join a book club, but you would like to join a sports club.**

**I would prefer to join a sports club.**

**d) The same friend suggests going to the cinema in your town tomorrow. You are not sure.**

**I'm not sure about that.**

Practice test one

**a) Someone says they think magazines are a waste of money. Disagree, giving a reason.**

**I don't agree. / I (completely) disagree. Magazines are an excellent means of spreading news and educating people.**

**b) A friend from England calls and asks about the weather. You see dark clouds in the sky.**

**(I think/It looks like) it's going to rain.**

**c) One of your friends watched a football match on TV and found it boring. You have a different opinion.**

**That's (just) not true. / I disagree. (It was a good match.)**

**d) You hear someone use a word you do not understand. The word is energy.**

**What does energy mean? / Could you explain (the word) energy, please?**

Practice test two

**a) A foreign friend wants to know how to make tea the Egyptian way. Tell him/her what to do first.**

**First of all, boil some water, then add it to some tea leaves in a mug.**

**b) Someone asks what you were doing at eight o'clock this morning.**

**I was having/eating my breakfast. / I was going to school.**

**c) A friend asks you what you think about TV news programmes.**

**In my opinion / I think / as far as I'm concerned, they're too long / too short / too serious / very interesting.**

**d) A friend wants a job to help poor people. Advise him or her.**

**If I were you, I'd / I think you should / Why don't you study / train to be a doctor / a nurse / a volunteer in a charitable organization / an NGO?**

Practice test three

**a) You do not understand why it goes dark at night. Ask someone to explain it.**

**Can you explain why it goes dark at night?**

**b) A friend suggests that swimming is a good way to keep fit. State another way.**

**Running / Squash / Tennis is also good exercise / a good way to keep fit.**

**c) A friend suggests that you join a squash club together. Suggest something else.**

**(Personally,) I'd prefer to / I'd rather join a tennis club. / How about joining a tennis club?**

**d) Someone asks where your friend Ali is. You have not seen him for a long time. You are almost certain he is on holiday.**

**Ali must be on holiday. I haven't seen him for a long time.**

		Speakers & places	
Place		Speaker A	Speaker B
airline office	مكتب خطوط جويه	clerk	traveller
airport		passport official	traveller
bakery		baker	customer
bank		bank clerk	businessman
bank		accountant	client
barber's		barber	customer
beach		tourist	rescuer
beauty shop	مركز تجميل	bride	beautician
bookshop		salesman	customer
bread kiosk		seller	customer
building site		builder	engineer
bus	اتوبيس	conductor	passenger
butcher's		butcher	customer
café	مقهى	waiter	customer
carpentry		carpenter	house owner
check in desk		check-in clerk	passenger
chemist's	صيدلية	chemist	customer
church	كنيسة	priest	christian
cinema	سينما	usher	spectator
classroom		student	teacher
clinic	عيادة	patient	nurse
clothes shop		salesperson	customer
club		coach	trainee
college	كلية	professor	student
company		manager	candidate
computer centre	مركز كمبيوتر	programmer	technician
confectionery	محل حلويات	confectioner	customer
court		murderer	lawyer
court		criminal	judge
court		witness	judge
customs		customs official	passenger
dentist's	عيادة الأسنان	dentist	patient
doctor's	عيادة	doctor	patient
dressmaker's	مكان الخياطة	dressmaker	customer
dry-cleaner		dry-cleaner	customer
electrician's	محل كهربائي	electrician	customer
electronics'	محل الإلكترونيات	technician	customer
embassy		official	applicant
exchange office		employee	customer
factory		engineer	worker
faculty of medicine	كلية الطب	professor	student
fire station		fireman	officer
fish market		trader	customer
flat	شقه	landlord	tenant
flower shop	محل زهور	florist	customer
fossil exhibition	معرض حفريات	keeper	visitor
fruitseller's	محل فكهاني	fruitseller	customer
gallery	صالة فنية	artist	visitor
garage		car owner	garage man
greengrocer's		greengrocer	customer
grocer's		grocer	buyer
hairstylist's	صالون كوافير	hairstylist	customer
home	البيت	husband	wife
hospital		doctor	visitor
hotel		receptionist	resident
hotel		bride	bridegroom
house		host	guest
information desk		information clerk	traveller
jeweller's	محل جواهرجي	jeweller	customer
kindergarten		child	baby sitter

kitchen		mother		daughter	ابنة
laboratory		professor		researcher	
lawyer's office		lawyer		client	عميل
library		librarian	امين مكتبة	student	
market		merchant		buyer	
mechanic's	ورشه ميكانيكي	mechanic	ميكانيكي	driver	
mosque		sheikh	شيخ	prayer	
museum		guide		tourist	
music hall	صالة موسيقي	musician	موسيقيار	audience	جمهور
net café	مقهى نت	assistant		client	عميل
newspaper agent's		newspaper agent	وكيل صحف	customer	
nursery		baby sitter	مربية	parents	والدين
oculist's	عيادة عيون	oculist	طبيب العيون	patient	مريض
office		secretary	سكرتيرة	client	عميل
office		interviewer		interviewee	
optician's		optician		patient	مريض
passport control		officer		passenger	
passport department		official		citizen	
pastry	محل حلويات	customer		salesperson	
petrol station	محطة بنزين	attendant		car owner	مالك سيارة
pharmacy	صيدلية	pharmacist	صيدلي	customer	
photo shop	محل تصوير	photographer		customer	
plane		air hostess	مضيفه جوية	passenger	
plane		flight attendant	مضيفه جوية	passenger	
playground		referee		player	
plumber's		plumber		landlord	
police station	م شرطة	officer		citizen	
police station		officer		reporter	
post office	مكتب بريد	post official	موظف بالبريد	citizen	
radio studio	استوديو اذاعي	interviewer	مذيع	scientist	
railway station	محطة سكه حديد	booking clerk		passenger	
railway station	محطة سكه حديد	conductor		passenger	
railway station	محطة سكه حديد	porter	شمال	traveller	
restaurant		waiter		customer	
school		headmaster		student	
service center	بانه	technician		customer	
shoe shop	محل احديه	seller		customer	
shoemaker's	محل صانع احديه	shoemaker	صانع احديه	customer	
stadium		announcer	مذيع	audience	جمهور
stationery shop	مكتبه ادوات مكتبيه	salesperson		customer	
street		taxi driver		passenger	
street		passer-by		policeman	
street		foreigner		motorist	سائق سيارة
supermarket		assistant		customer	
surgeon's	عيادة الجراحه	surgeon		doctor	
surgery	عيادة	nurse		doctor	
swimming pool		trainer		swimmer	
tailor's	مكان خياط	tailor		customer	
telephone office	مكتب تليفون	operator	عامل التليفون	client	عميل
television studio	ستوديو تليفزيون	interviewer	مذيع	interviewee	متحاور معه
theatre		usher		audience	مشاهد
tourist site	موقع سياحي	guide		tourist	
toy shop		salesperson		customer	
train		inspector		passenger	
train station		station master		traveller	
travel agency		travel agent	وكيل السفر	tourist	
watchmaker's		watchmaker		customer	
zoo	حديقة حيوان	keeper		visitor	
zoo	حديقة حيوان	handler	سايس	tourist	
animal hospital	مستشفى حيوانات	vet	طبيب بيطري	animal's owner	مالك الحيوان
photography site	موقع تصوير	director		actor	
ambulance	سيارة اسعاف	paramedic		patient	مريض

First term speakers

- 1) A: So, John, could you tell our listeners how you started?  
 B: Certainly. It was when I was seven. I won first prize in a poetry competition.  
 When I was a student, some of my stories were published in a university magazine.  
 A: And now it's your full-time job?  
 B: That's right. My second novel was published last year.  
Place: radio station/studio speaker A: interviewer speaker B: writer function: ask and answer (interview) questions
- 2) A: Could you help me carry the shopping into the house, please, Aisha?  
 B: OK, Mum. Where shall I put it?  
 A: Just put the bags on the kitchen floor for the moment.  
Place: outside a family house speaker A: mother speaker B: daughter/Aisha function: ask for help and agree to help
- 3) A: At last we're here. What time does our flight leave, Dad?  
 B: At midday. We've still got lots of time.  
 A: Are you sure we have everything we need?  
 B: Yes, I'm sure. Please stop worrying, Ali!  
Place: airport speaker A: son speaker B: father function: ask and answer questions/make a request
- 4) A: So, for your homework, I want you all to make a list of all the plants growing in your neighbourhood.  
 B: Shall we just write the names of the plants?  
 A: No, write the names and a short description.  
 B: When is the homework for?  
 A: Next Thursday, please.  
Place: classroom speaker A: teacher speaker B: student function: give instructions
- 5) A: Excuse me, sir. The captain has asked everyone to return to their seats.  
 B: Does that mean we are going to land soon?  
 A: Yes, in about 15 minutes.  
Place: a plane speaker A: flight attendant speaker B: passenger function: make a request
- 6) A: Have you seen Tarek?  
 B: No, sir. He was at his desk on the phone a few minutes ago.  
 A: Isn't he there now?  
 B: No, maybe he's gone home already.  
 A: He can't have gone home. He's preparing a report for me.  
Place: an office speaker A: boss/manager speaker B: Tarek's colleague/office worker function: ask for information; guess/deduce information

English Notes & Grammar  
Unit one: Reach for the stars

Idiomatic Expressions:

on a radio programme	هناك مشكله في	get together	يجتمع - يتقابل
There is a problem with...	يسير في الفضاء	at a height of	
do space walks	يقوم بالتنبؤ عن	like a giant	
make predictions about	اول هبوط على القمر	find a cure for	يجد علاج لـ
first landing on the moon	يمارس رياضات انعدام الوزن	go for a walk	يخرج للسير
do weightless sports	يساعد في حل المشكلات	a waste of money	مضيعة للمال
help solve problems	مهمة لمدة ساعتين	It's expected that....	
a two-hour mission	إنها بالفعل مرتبه	make arrangements for	يعمل ترتيبات لـ..
It's already arranged	يقوم باصلاح	over the years ( )	على مر السنين ( )
do repairs		for sure	بالتاكيد

Prepositions

attached to	يشير إلى	problem with	
refer to	يعتني بـ	break down	يتعطل
form of	يسير حو	suffer from	يعاني من
look after	بعيدا	way of	طريقه لـ
walk around	يشير إلى	kind of	
take off	يسافر مع	a waste of	مضيعة لـ
far away	يعتمد على	think of (about)	يفكر في
refer to	يستفيد من	cope with	يتعامل مع / يساير
travel with	يتعلم من	look down on	ينظر لاسفل على
depend on	ينفق على	talk about	يتحدث عن
benefit from	يخطط لـ	suffer from	يعاني من
learn from	يكشف	look forward to	ينتظر إلى
spend on		walk around	يسير حول
plan for		queue up	يقف في طابور
find out			

Language Notes

- 1) Predictions:  
 \* The data can be used to make economic predictions.  
 \* There is speculation that the chief officer is ill.
- 3) launch: 4) release: - -
- \* Egypt launched the Nile sat101.  
 \* The release of carbon dioxide into the atmosphere should be reduced.
- 5) queue: طابور (مجموعة من الناس يصطفون في طابور)  
 I had to join a queue for the bread.
- 6) line: طابور (مجموعة من الأشياء أو الناس يصطفون في طابور)

\* Students stand in lines and salute the flag.

7) row:

\* Our seats are six rows from the front.

9) birthday: يد ميلاد

\* Next January is my birthday.

\* The election of the parliament was the main event of 2010.

11) cause of: ( )

\* What was the cause of the delay?

13) date: ( ) / ( )

\* I have a date with some of my friends.

15) particular: /

\* I have a particular reason for asking for your mobile number.

\* There is a private number calling.

8) anniversary: ذكري سنوية

It is our wedding anniversary.

10) event: (حدث بخاصة الأحداث المهمة)

12) reason for: تفسيراً / تبريراً

I don't know the reason for selling one's soul.

14) appointment: ( ) / ( )

I have an appointment with my dentist.

16) private: ( )

### Grammar: Future forms

1) will + infinitive:

I think the match will be very exciting.

I will not (won't) see you until the weekend.

We usually use will + infinitive without to for:

• predictions. I'll probably be away for a week.

• future facts. I'll be 16 next week.

• quick decisions. That's the phone. I'll answer it.

• offers. I'll go shopping with you if you like.

2) going to + infinitive

I am (I'm) going to watch the TV news before I go to bed.

He isn't going to visit his uncle until Saturday.

Watch out! The baby is going to fall.

We usually use going to + infinitive for:

• plans, intentions and decisions. My sister is going to apply for a place at medical school. (التخطيط للمستقبل)

• predictions with present reality or evidence. I just read the weather report. It's going to be sunny.

3) Present continuous:

She is (She's) flying to India in the summer.

I am (I'm) not doing anything tomorrow.

We usually use the present continuous for: • Arrangements. Tomorrow, we're visiting friends. (ترتيبات محددة)

Present simple

The course starts in October.

This lesson doesn't finish until 2.30.

We usually use the present Simple for: • Events on a timetable.

\* My plane leaves at 7.30 in the morning.

### Unit 2: The Prisoner Of Zenda

Idiomatic Expressions:

well known for	مشهور بـ	take advice from	ياخذ نصيحة من
work as + job	يعمل كـ	do (something) as planned	يفعل كما هو مخطط له
in late + year		is about to	
make a lot of money	يكون مالاً كثيراً (ثروة)	end happily	تنتهي نهايه سعيدة
make regular visits to	يقوم بزيارات منتظمة لـ	have the right to	لديه الحق لكي
look so alike	يبدو متطابقين جداً	no, not in the least	لا، ليس على الإطلاق
look at each other in astonishment	ينظرون لبعضهم البعض في دهشة	see each other for the first time	يلتقون لأول مرة

### Prepositions

sort of		protect from	يحمي
focus on	يركز على	steal from	يسرق من
plenty of		borrow from	يستعير من
fall off	يسقط	free from	يحرر من
belong to	ينتمي إلى - يخص	based on	
find out	يكشف - يجده	come back	يرجع
excited about		talk about	يتكلم عن
hear about	يسمع عن	decide to	يقرر أن
get to	يصل إلى	break in / into	يقتحم
expert in	خبير في	interested in	مهتم بـ
pay for	يدفع لـ	put down	يلقي
find out	يكشف	popular with	

### Language Notes

1) couple:

\* The young couple were very excited.

3) classics:

\* His studies was in classics.

4) classicism:

\* Classicism was popular in Europe in the 18<sup>th</sup> century.

5) debate:

\* After a long debate, the parliament approved the law.

6) argument:

\* We had an argument with the driver about the fare.

2) double:

I should have asked for double of my car.

دراسة الأدب الإغريقي و الروماني

الكلاسيكية (هي أسلوب أدبي يتميز بالبساطة و الوضوح)

مناقشة / مناظرة بين فريقين مؤيد و معارض

جدال / نقاش حاد بين شخصين أو أكثر

7) coronation:

\* We attended the coronation of the new king.

حفل التتويج

8) coronet:

\* The princess was wearing a beautiful coronet at the coronation.

تاج صغير يلبسه الأمراء و النبلاء

9) escapism:

\* Books were a form of escapism.

أنشطة أو تسلية

10) activities:

\* Students have many different activities at school.

أنشطة رياضية ، اجتماعية، ثقافية

11) work:

\* I usually go to work in the early morning.

عمل شغل ( اسم لا يجمع)

12) works:

\* I enjoy reading the works of Charles Dickens.

( فني - ) تحفة فنية / مصنع

13) champion:

\* Abu Treka is a national champion.

بطل رياضي

14) hero:

\* Marwan became a hero after saving the lives of hundreds.

طل ( قام بعمل بطولي في مسرحية / فيلم)

15) between:

\* The match is between Al Ahly and El Zamalak.

بين اثنين

16) among:

\* The teacher is standing among his students.

بين أكثر من اثنين

Unit 2: Subject-verb agreement: special cases

1) Countable nouns

1) regular plurals:

book(s) – car (s)- desk (s)- pen(s) – missile(s) –

صيغ الجمع العادية ( يتم تكوينها بإضافة حرف )

2) irregular plurals

man (men) – mouse (mice) – foot (feet) – woman (women) – goose (geese) – tooth (teeth)

صيغ الجمع الشاذ

3) Words have the same form:

a) Some kinds of animals:

(sheep – deer – fish – salmon)

كلمات لها نفس التكوين في (المفرد و الجمع)

بعض أنواع الحيوانات

b) Some nouns like:

(aircraft – spacecraft)

c) Some nouns ends in (s)

(crossroads – means – series – species – works)

بعض الأسماء التي تنتهي

( أعمال أدبية - )

Nouns in countable uses can be singular or plural

• He went to a school in Cairo. There are hundreds of schools in Cairo.

ذي يعد يمكن أن يكون مفرد أو جمع

• The Prisoner of Zenda is a novel. I read three novels last week.

In countable uses, singular nouns can be used with these words.

الاسماء التي تجمع يمكن أن يأتي قبلها التعبيرات الآتية:

a / an: I've just seen a train/an accident.

the Where's the book I lent you?

one There are 60 seconds in one minute.

In countable uses, plural nouns can be used with these words and phrases.

الاسماء التي تعد يمكن أن تأتي مع التعبيرات الآتية:

any Were there any mistakes in your homework?

some Some children are having a picnic in the park.

many There aren't many cars on the road this morning.

How many? How many students are there in your class?

the The apples were in my shopping bag.

Two, three etc. There are six CDs and four DVDs on the table.

Uncountable uses of nouns:

a) Types of food (flour/دقيق/butter /cheese /rice /sugar /spaghetti /yoghurt )

b) liquids (coffee/قهوة/oil/زيت/petrol/بنزين/water/ماء/عصير/lemonade/ليمون/soup /milk )

c) materials (wood /iron/حديد /gold/ذهب /silver /glass /china/الصين /crystal )

d) abstract nouns (knowledge/beauty/love/justice/help/education/freedom/democracy/advice/progress/

research)

e) others (behaviour /luggage /baggage /news/accommodation /rubbish

/equipment/machinery /furniture/fun/hair/weather/jewellery/مجوهرات)

Nouns in uncountable uses cannot be made plural, used with a/an or with a number.

Could I have a glass of water, please?

It isn't a good idea to borrow money.

In uncountable uses, nouns can be used with the following words and phrases.

الاسماء التي لا تعد يمكن أن تستخدم مع العبارات و الاسماء الآتية:

the The water in the river is very clean.

any Have we got any bread?

some We have some bread, but we don't have any butter.

much We don't have much time left.

How much? How much food do we need for ten people?

Nouns and noun phrases which refer to groups

و العبارات الاسمية التي تشير إلي جماعة

Most nouns which refer to groups can be used with singular or plural verbs.

معظم الاسماء التي تشير إلي مجموعات يمكن أن تستخدم مع الافعال المفردة و الجمع.

• When we think of the group as a whole, we use a singular verb.

The Egyptian team is going to play in the finals.

• When we think of the members of the group, we use a plural verb.

The Egyptian team are going to play in the finals.

**Nouns which look plural**

**Quantities and amounts look plural but are used with singular verbs.**

الكميات و المقادير تبدو جمع ولكن يستخدم معها فعل مفرد.

- Ten million pounds is a lot of money.
- Fifty liters of petrol fills my car.
- Five kilometers is a long way to walk if you're carrying a heavy bag.

**Pair nouns**

أسماء تتكون من جزئيين و يأتي بعدها فعل جمع

(jeans بنطلون جينز - trousers - pants - shorts بنطلون قصير - pajamas - shoes - scissors  
- gloves - glasses - scales ميزان - tweezers )

**Partitives**

(a piece of - a bit of - an item of )

a tube of toothpaste		a bag of flour	كيس دقيق
a box of matches	عليه كبريت	a lump of sugar	
a packet of cigarettes	عليه سجائر	a spoonful of sugar	
a sheet of paper		a slice of meat	شريحة لحم
a reel of cotton	بكرة خيط	a loaf of bread	رغيف خبز
a packet of needles	عليه ابر	a grain of sand	
a drop of water		a speck of dust	
a glass of lemonade	كوب ليمون	a bottle of milk	
a jar of jam		a bar of soap	

أسماء يتوقف صيغة المفرد و الجمع فيها على معناها:

an ice= an ice cream	ايس كريم	ice on the road	جليد
a paper = a newspaper	جريدة	some paper to write on	
a glass of water		some glass for the window	
an iron		iron and steel	حديد
the lights came on		the speed of light	
there's a hair in my soup		brush your hair	
I met her two times before		I spent so much time writing.	
the journey was a great experience.		He has enough experience.	
a small business.	شركة صغيرة	to do business	
a drink		drink	
an onion		a hot dog with onion	
a pepper		salt and pepper	
a coffee	فنجان قهوة	coffee	قهوة
a chocolate	قطعة شيكولاته	chocolate	شيكولاته

**Unit 3: Energy**

**Idiomatic Expressions:**

produce as much energy as	ينتج طاقة كبيرة مثل	nothing can live without	لا شيء يمكن ان يعيش بدون
(be) used only once		can't afford to	لا يقدر ماليا على
(be) pumped to the surface	يضخ للسطح	this is known as	هذا معروف كـ
in other ways		in an open place	
below the surface of		come up through	
make fuel for	يصنع وفود لاجل	stop using up	
reduce our use of	يقلل من استخدامنا لـ	do a survey into	يقوم بمسح شامل على

**Prepositions**

connect to		last for	يستمر لمدة
dangerous to		important for	هام لاجل
turn into	يتحول إلى	pay for	يدفع لـ
drill into	يحفر في	good for	جيد لـ
form of		come through	يأتي من خلال
type of		go through	يمر من خلال
sort of		come up	
run out of	ينفذ	use up	ينفذ / ينضب
instead of		turn off	يغلق
switch off	يطفى	push against	يضغط على
supply with	يمد بـ	extract from	يستخرج من
increase by	يزداد بمقدار	depend on	يعتمد على
turn down	يخفض	made from	

**Language Notes**

- 1) energy: \* It is important to conserve energy. The party came to power at the last election.
- 2) power: / /
- 3) molten: منصهر عند درجة حرارة عالية 4) melted: ذائب عند درجة حرارة عالية
- \* Metal is molten at the temperature of 1000° C./The sun melted the snow.
- 5) steam: \* The kettle is boiling and the kitchen is full of steam.
- 6) vapour: ( )
- \* Heat a test tube till a brown vapour is given off.
- 7) below: ( ) 8) under: ( ) /
- \* Israa lives in the flat below.
- \* The baby was playing under the table.
- 9) pipe: ينقل عبر الأنابيب 10) pump: يضخ
- \* Oil is piped across the desert.

\* The engine is used to pump water out of the mine.

11) **fuel:** ( )

\* The cost of fuel varies a lot.

13) **waste:** قمامة / نفايات

\* Don't throw your waste in the street.

15) **outdoor:**

\* This is a beautiful outdoor swimming pool.

16) **outdoors:**

\* I prefer spending my weekend outdoors.

17) **spill / spilt / spilt:**

18) **spell / spelt / spelt:**

19) **split / split / split:**

20) **spoil / spoilt / spoilt:**

12) **fuels:** أنواع مختلفة من الوقود (اسم بعد)  
Fossil fuels cause pollution.

14) **waist:**

Let me measure your waist.

(يتبعها اسم) في الهواء الطلق / الخلاء

تأتي بعد فعل ولا يتبعها اسم) في الهواء الطلق

يسكب - ينسكب

ينتهي

ينشط - ينقسم

يفسد

### Unit 3: Present simple: active and passive

المضارع البسيط المبني للمعلوم

**Present simple active:**

1) **Facts which are always true:**

\* The earth goes round the sun.

2) **Habitual actions:**

\* I usually take the kids to the nursery.

3) **For narration:**

\* The main character in the story was a brave man.

ملخص لأحداث روائية في كتاب أو فيلم

4) **For timetable:**

\* The plane from Holland arrives at 8 P.M

جدول مواعيد

5) **To give instructions or directions:**

\* You must give signal before you turn right or left.

إعطاء أوامر أو تعليمات (بدلاً من جما الأمر)

6) **After time conjunctions:**

\* after / before / when / as soon as / till / until / if

بعد الروابط الزمنية للدلالة على المستقبل

→ present simple → future simple

7) **With time expressions:**

\* once a... / three times a (week) / at weekends / in June / on Mondays / on week days.

مع التعبيرات الزمنية

8) **In sentences beginning with:**

\* here / there / why don't.....

9) **For sports commentaries:**

\* Abu Trika kicks the ball and passes it to Saved Moawed.

للتعليقات الرياضية

10) **Time expressions:**

(usually / sometimes/always/often/ever

/regularly / frequently / seldom

/never/every /occasionally / rarely / hardly

**Present simple passive:**

The present simple passive is formed with **am/is/are + past participle of the main verb.**

يستخدم المضارع البسيط مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية

(في نهاية الأسبوع /at the week end

المضارع البسيط المبني للمجهول

يتكون المبني للمجهول في المضارع البسيط من الصيغة التي تحتها خط

• Trees are sometimes blown down in the night.

• His house is heated by the sun.

We can say who or what does the action of a passive verb by adding by + the agent.

(by)

يمكن

• Trees are sometimes blown down by the wind.

Intransitive verbs (those without an object) cannot be used in the passive form. They cannot be followed by an agent.

الأفعال الغير متعدية ليس لها صيغة مبني للمجهول

(cry /shout يصيح/come up /grow up يكبر/camp يعسكر/lie /roar يزار/limp يعرج/go around (يتجول

• Heat and light come from the sun.

• A strange thing happened yesterday.

**We use the passive:**

• To emphasise a particular word or idea, often the main subject of the sentence.

Water's brought to people's houses in large plastic bottles.

(The important thing is water, not the person who brings the water.)

### Unit 4: Writers and stories

**Idiomatic Expressions:**

old-fashioned dresses	فساتين موضه قديمه	at night	ليلا
first prize in poetry		I think that	
all the lights went out		in my opinion	
since the age of	....	as far as I'm concerned	فيما يتعلق بـ
as well as writing		at midday	في منتصف النهار
graduate in / from	/ يتخ	by the power of	
at the same time		a ten-minute break	

### Prepositions

help with	يساعد في	a manager of	مدير
happy with	سعيد بـ	translate into	يترجم إلى
succeed in	ينجح في	type onto	يطبع على
give in	يسلم شيء (باليد)	think of / about	يفكر في
believe in	يؤمن بـ	made into	
expert on / in	خبير فـ	interested in	مهتم بـ
full of		go out	ينطفئ (النور)
introduce to	يقدم لـ	listen to	ينصت إلى
ask for	يطلب	write for	يكتب لـ
use for	يستخدم لـ	work for	يعمل لـ
important for	هام لـ	thank for	يشكر على

Language Notes

- 1) **custom:** عادة جماعية (اجتماعية / دينية) **2) habit:** عادة (فردية)  
 \* Celebrating Sham el Neseem is an old Egyptian custom.  
 \* Smoking is a bad habit.  
 3) **during:** ( / ) 4) **long:** ( / )  
 She fell asleep during the film. It rained all night long.  
 5) **story:** قصة قصيرة 6) **novel:** رواية  
 \* The story of Naguib Mahfouz was turned into a film.  
 \* Charles Dickens wrote so many novels.  
 7) **writing:** طريقة الكتابة / الخط 8) **writings:** الأشياء المكتوبة  
 \* Your hand writing is very bad. We really enjoy Dickens' writings.  
 9) **routine:** الروتين 10) **red tape:** الروتين الحكومي  
 \* Reading the papers is part of my daily routine. We suffer from the daily red tape.

The present perfect tenseFormation:

( have / has + P.P)

التكوين

- \* She has dusted the flat for 3 hours.  
 \* I have watched TV since nine o'clock.

Time expressions:

(just / already / ever / never / lately / since / for / yet)  
 so far / up till now / until now / throughout ages  
 (عبر السنين / استخدام بعض التعبيرات الزمنية)

The usage of the time expressions:1) already

\* The workers have already ended the demonstration.

2) yet:

\* The dispute between Israel and The palatine has not solved yet.

3) ever:

\* Have you ever read The Egyptian Gazette?

4) never:

\* I have never drunk alcohol.

5) **since:** (يأتي بعدها فترة زمنية محددة) منذ (May / 2 o'clock/ yesterday / Sunday / last week / Winter / 1998 / her birthday / his death / lunch / then / his childhood / the age of)

6) for:

(مدة (فترة زمنية غير محددة) (5 years/2 months/6 days/ever/more than.../a long time/a short time/a day/ages/an hour/ 6 hours / the last week)

Note the following:

Ex: It's a month since I last visited my uncle.

(for) (since) استخدم (مدة زمنية) عند البدء بـ

Ex: I last saw Abo Treka 2 days ago.

يط.

(I last / The last time....)

Ex: We last played football in 2010.

(in+ الماضي البسيط مع (أي تاريخ في الماضي

Ex: I haven't driven my car since I was in Tanta.

(when) (since)

1) It is still raining.

2) We needn't hurry. We still have plenty of time.

(still) مع المضارع المستمر وكذلك المضارع البسيط.

(yet)

Ex: It hasn't finished cooking yet.

2) Have you finished mending your car yet?

(have / has been to) و التي تفيد الذهاب والعودة.

Ex: Manal has been to Canada.

(have / has gone to) و التي تفيد الذهاب فقط (ما زال هناك)

Ex: Salma has gone to America.

(never) (ever) (It's the best / It's the first time / It's the most)

Ex: It is the best match our national team has ever played.

It is the first time Mustafa has ever swum in the sea.

(How long ago) نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.

Ex: How long ago did you see the film?

The past perfect tenseFormation:Had + P.P

التكوين

Tense markers:

يستخدم الماضي التام مع الكلمات التالية:

1) After / as soon as → past perfect/past simple → past simple

Ex: After I had done/did my homework, I visited my friend.

2) past simple → because → past perfect

Ex: I couldn't get into my flat because I had lost my key.

3) When → past simple → past simple (no duration)

Ex: When Mustafa saw the snake, he shouted for help.

4) Before / By the time → past simple → past perfect/past simple

Ex: By the time I took the medicine, I had had/had the meal.

5) didn't + inf → till / until → had + P.P

Ex: I didn't answer the question until I had read the questions

6) subject ( ) + had [ no sooner / scarcely / hardly ] P.P/past simple [than / when / when] + past simple

Ex: He (had) no sooner started the journey than he finished it.

\* في حالة البدء بأحدى هذه الروابط تصبح الجملة على شكل سؤال.

Ex: No sooner had she cooked/did she cook the lunch than her husband came.

7) No sooner / Hardly / Scarcely [ had + P.P / did + inf. ] + than / when + past simple

Ex: No sooner / Hardly had they known/did they know the question than / when he answered it.

8) After / Before + ing/ noun

Ex: After reading the question, he answered it.

9) Having + P.P

Ex: Having finished studying, he went out for a walk.

10) Immediately on / Shortly after + v.ing / noun

Ex: Immediately on his arrival, the phone rang.

### The past simple tense

[ yesterday / ago / in the past / once / in 2009 مع السنين ]

Ex: The river flooded its banks last week.

My sister received my letter 3 days ago.

Notes:

\* يمكن استخدام كلمات مثل (always / often)

Ex: I always get up early when I was a student.

Usage:

1) past action( exact habit)

حدث بدأ و أنتهي في وقت محدد في الماضي.

Ex: I watched the match yesterday.

2) past habit:

Ex: I used to play football when I was young.

3) Actions in stories

Ex: Once upon a time there was a demonstration against terrorism.

### The past continuous tense

Formation:

Was / were + ing

التكوين

Ex: she was washing the dishes when the water went out.

Key words:

While بينما / as بينما / Just as بينما / when

Note:

1) while / as / just as → past continuous → past simple/past continuous

Ex: Just as I was studying, I heard a loud shout.

2) When → past simple/past continuous → past continuous/past continuous

Ex: When my father came, I was doing my homework.

3) While → past continuous/past simple → past continuous/past simple

في حالة حدوث الحدثين في وقت واحد في الماضي.

Ex: While I was watching/watched TV, my brother was studying/studied his lessons.

Usage:

An action that happened in the past and continued for a period of time.

Ex: I was playing football all day yesterday.

### Unit 5 : Christie : N or M

Idiomatic Expressions:

the queen of English crime fiction.	ملكة جرائم الخيال الانجليزية	the orient express train	قطار الشرق السريع.
that's the best way to	هذا هو افضل طريق لـ	that's incredible	هذا لا يصدق
it's time for war / peace	انه وقت الحرب / السلام	on the way back to	في طريق العودة إلى
without the help of		perform without a break	يؤدي بدون توقف
to everyone's surprise	ولدهشة كل فرد	at a very young age	
deeply affected by		all over the world	
win a prize for	يفوز بجائزة في	at any time	
on TV/ the radio/the internet	في التلفاز/الراديو/الانترنت	do a crime	يرتكب جريمة
make a recommendation to/on	يقدم نصيحة ل / على	make more use of	يستفيد أكثر من

### Prepositions

look after	يعتني ب	close to	قريب من
look for	يبحث عن	welcome to	
work for	يعمل لذي	instead of	
work with	يعمل مع	think of	يفكر في
busy with		suffer from	يعاني من
compare with	يقارن بـ	hear from	يتلقى اخبار من
translate into	يترجم إلى	safe...from	.....
come into	يدخل إلى	stop....from	يمنع....من
turn into	يتحول إلى	sure about	
based on		learn about	يعلم عن
pass on	ينقل إلى	tell about	يخبر عن
interested in	مهتم بـ	find out about	يكتشف ما يتعلق ب
take place	يحدث	increase by	تزيد بمقدار

### Language Notes

1) poisoned (adj) مسموم / وضع به السم 2) poisonous: سام (مواد كيماوية / ثعبان)

Ex: Take care! The food is poisoned. Ex: It's a poisonous snake.

3) shy of: خجل من / لدية حياء 4) ashamed of / about (ارثكاب ذنب / خطأ) يخجل من

Ex: Rasha feels shy of strangers. Ex: The criminal felt ashamed of his past action.

5) hear: يسمع (تشير إلى حاسة السمع) 6) listen to: يصغي إلى (عن قصد)

Ex: It's harmful thing to hear such loud noise.

Ex: We listened to Sheikh Mohamed Hassan carefully.

7) arrest: يقبض علي (متهما بارتكاب جريمة)

8) capture: بأسر

Ex: The police arrested the criminal. We captured the Israeli soldiers in October war.

### The passive verbs

الأزمنة البسيطة

#### 1) THE SIMPLE TENSE

- **ACTIVE:** subject+ verb+ object
- **PASSIVE:** agent+am/is/are/was/were+p.p

EX: Ali built the house. → The house was built.

#### 2) THE CONTINUOUS TENSES

- **ACTIVE:** subject+ verb+ object
- **PASSIVE:** agent+am/is/are/was/were+being+p.p

EX: she is cooking rice. → Rice is being cooked.

#### 3) THE PERFECT TENSES

- **ACTIVE:** subject+ verb+ object
- **PASSIVE:** agent+ have/ has/had+ been+ p.p

EX: we have bought a car. → A car has been bought.

#### 4) THE DEFECTIVE VERBS

- **ACTIVE:** subject+ verb+ object
- **PASSIVE:** agent+ any DV+ be + p.p

EX: He can carry the heavy box. → The heavy box can be carried.

#### 5) The causative form:

صيغة السببية

( cleaned/ironed/cooked/repaired/painted/polished/made/designed/built/serviced/cut)

- **Verb to have / get + object + P.P**

Ex: I have my hair cut.

عند التحويل إلى المبني للمجهول تستخدم التركيبات الآتية كما هي مضافا إليها be+p.p

1) Have to, has to, had to, will have to

2) needn't, seem to, appear to → + be + p.p

3) be going to, be about to, be supposed to

\* I needn't know his name. → His name needn't be known.

الأفعال التي يأتي بعدها المصدر بدون to ،،،، عند التحويل إلى المبني للمجهول يأتي بعدها to

make, see, hear

\* I made him stay at home. → He was made to stay at home.

إذا وجد في الجملة أحد الأفعال الآتية تحول إلى مبني للمجهول بطريقتين:

Say, think, believe, consider, know, claim, understand, report

\* People say that he is clever. → It is said that he is clever./ He is said to be clever.

إذا وجد بالجملة مفعولين.....يمكن استخدام أي منهما ليكون فاعلا و إذا بدأت بالمفعول الشيء (غير عاقل) توضع for to

\* I gave him a book. → He was given a book. / A book was given to him.

\* We use the passive to:

1) Show what you are more interested in:

\* My friend painted this picture last year.

2) When you don't know, or it doesn't matter, who did the action:

\* Two books have been taken from our classroom.

3) When it is obvious who did the action:

\* They were arrested at the airport.

### Unit 6: The importance of trees

#### Idiomatic Expressions:

let's move on to		do no damage to	لا يسبب ضرر
at the ends of		for much longer	لوقت أطول كثيرا
get a headache	لديه صداع	make a list of	يعد قائمه بـ
set rules	يضع قواعد	research on the internet	
play the piano	يعرف علي البيانو	freshly -cut tree trunk	جدوع شجرة مقطوعه حديثا
take turns to	ياخذ دورة لـ	along the side of the street	بمحاذاة الطريق
keep away from	يبعد عن	in this way	و بهذه الطريقة

#### Prepositions

depend on	يعتمد علي	remove from	يزيل من
cut down	يقطع / يزيل	take in	يمنتص
refer to	يشير إلى	drill into	يحفر في
find out	يكتشف	look at	ينظر إلى
fall over	يسقط علي	look around	ينظر حول
compare..with	يقارن.....بـ	type of	
connect with		instead of	
protect.....from	يحمي...من	give out	يتصاعد
put.....into	يضع...في	press down	يضغط لاسفل
wait for	ينتظر لـ	look for	يبحث عن
sit on	يجلس علي	read out	يقرا بصوت عالي
made in		made from	
made by		made out of	
enough for/ to		tie....to	يربط....في
put....on	يرتدي / يضع فوق	example of	

#### Language Notes

1) tall: ( man / tree/ tower / skyscraper)

Ex: How tall are you?

طويل

2) **high:** ( mountain / hill / fence) /

Ex: Everest is a very high mountain.

3) **nearly:** (تقريبا (ليس تماما أو بالضبط) 4) **approximately:** (تقريبا (بالزيادة أو بالنقصان)

Ex: It is nearly 7 years since I last saw Maged.

ex: This packet is approximately 3 kilos.

5) **instrument:** (الآلات (لعمل دقيق محدد) 6) **tool:** (آلات (لعمل يدوي)

Ex: A dentist's instruments need to be constantly sterilized.

Ex: Tools used by a carpenter are different from those used by a painter.

7) **drill:** (يحفر / يشق (بحفار) 8) **dig:** (يحفر بالآلات أو يدويا)

Ex: They are still drilling for oil in the Red Sea.

Ex: The kids have dug a huge hole in the sand.

9) **weather:** ( )

ex: The match was cancelled due to the bad weather.

10) **climate:** ( ) 11) **calculate:** (يحسب بالأرقام / يعد بدقة)

Ex: It is hot and humid climate in Egypt in summer.

Ex: We've calculated the cost of a new office.

12) **estimate:** (يقدر تقريبا)

Ex: I estimate there must be at least 800 names on the list.

### The zero and the first conditional

1) **The zero case:** it expresses situation that are always true. (يعبر عن حقائق)

\* If → present simple → present simple

EX If water freezes, it turns into ice.

Ex: If / when you mix red and yellow, you get orange. (if) و بنفس المعنى و التكوين.

2) **THE FIRST CASE:** It expresses real possibilities. (when) ( whenever) ( )

\* If → present simple → shall / will + infinitive

Ex: If you are studying, I won't make any noise. (يجوز ( )

Ex: When Mustafa calls, I'll tell him the news. (if) في الحالة الأولى لتعني شيئا ما سيحدث بالتأكيد. (when) ( )

( can / may / might / have to / should / ought to )  
Ex: If I finish the project on time, I may take a few days off. (will) ( ) يمكن استخدام أفعال

Ex: If you see him, tell him about the party. (will) (imperative) (جم) يمكن استخدام (جم)

Ex: I'll come and see you tomorrow unless I'm busy. (if + not) (unless) ( )

(Provided that / providing that / as long as / on condition that)  
Ex: As long as you promise to be careful, you can use my computer. (if يمكن العبارات الآتية بدلا من

Ex: In case of practicing well, Mustafa will win. (In case of / with / By + v + ing) (سيمكن استخدام

### Unit 7: Building and Engineering

Idiomatic Expressions:

to the end of	إلى نهاية	It is considered to be	أنه يعتبر بمثابة
It's a lot newer than	أنه أجدد كثيرا من	give a reason for	يعطي سببا /
take a train / a bus	يسنقل (وسيلة مواصلات)	at certain times of the year	
go from one end to the other	يسير من نهاية طرف إلى الآخر	The whole thing sounds like a.....	
cut into pieces	يقطع لاجزاء	make plans to rescue	يصنع خططا لإنقاذ
keep the attackers out	يبقي المهاجمين بالخارج	have effects on	له تأثيرات على
come to an agreement on	يتوصل لاتفاق بشأن	five metres in diameter	

### Prepositions

compare with	يقارن ب	proud of	
work on	يعمل في شيء ليحسنه	travel around	يسافر حول
go under	يسير أسفل	plans for	
get to	يصل إلى	covered in	
made of		fall off	يسقط من
stop from	يمنع...من	enough for	
cut into	يقطع إلى	carved into	
continue for	يستمر لمدة	important for	هام لاجل
accessible to		used for	يستخدم لاجل
escape from	يهرب من	stop.....from	يمنع...من

### Confusing words

1) **finally:** (خيرًا (بعد مضي فترة / عدة صعوبات)

Ex: I could finally find my destination.

2) **eventually:** (أخيرا نهائيا (في نهاية حدث متصل)

Ex: Smoking eventually lead to his death.

3) **journey:** (رحلة) طويلة ولا توجد إشارة واضحة لنقطة النهاية)

Ex: The journey to the USA was really exciting.

4) **trip:** (رحلة) مؤقتة و قصيرة تزور فيها مكان و تعود)

Ex: We 're taking a weekend trip to siwa.

5) **tunnel:** ( ) 6) **Underground:** /

Ex: How do you feel when the train goes through the tunnel?

Ex: The underground made travelling very easy.

7) asleep / 8) Sleepy:

Ex: Don't make noise the children are asleep. I can't go on working, I feel sleepy.

9) another: واحدة أخرى إضافية

10) other:

Ex: We need another cup of tea.

Ex: I don't want that shirt, please give me the other one.

11) attached to:

Ex: This fan is attached to the ceiling.

12) connected with:

We are connected with one fate.  
Certainty & uncertainty

### PRESENT:

1) Ali is ill.

2) He must be ill.

3) He might be ill.

[ certain]

[near certain]

[ very uncertain]

### PAST:

1) Dina was out.

2) Dina must have been out.

3) Dina might/could have been ill.

[ certain]

[ near certain]

[ very uncertain]

### NOTE:

1) Must be = deduction

2) Must be-----can't be

( negation)

3) Must have been-----can't/couldn't have been

( negation)

### Unit 8: Stevenson: Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde

### Idiomatic Expressions:

live on the island	يعيش فوق الجزيرة	have a very interesting life	لديه حياة شيقه جدا
commit a crime	يرتكب جريمة	badly injured	اصيب بشدة
it's been best seller ever since	انه اكثر بيعا منذ ذلك الحين	spend a lot of time in bed	يقضي وقتا طويلا في الفراش
go abroad to	يذهب للخارج لكي	on the internet	
go on holiday	يذهب باجازة	it's rather late	إنها متأخرة إلى حد ما
find it quite difficult to	وجدتها صعبة جدا لكي	do secret experiments on	يقوم بتجارب سرية على
at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	end badly for	ينتهي بشك
at the same time as		look his best	يبدو في احسن صورته

### Prepositions

stay in	يقوم في	knock on	يطرق على
interested in	يهتم ب	sail to	يبحر إلى
good for	مفيد لـ	go back to	يعود إلى
welcome to		tell about	يخبر عن
think about	يفكر في	live in	يعيش في
die in	يموت في	belong to	ينتمي إلى
come from	يأتي من	help.....with	يساعد....في
wait for	ينتظر لـ	believe in	يومن ب/ يعتقد في
wrong about		disagree with	لا يوافق مع
disapprove of		bad for	
use.....for	يستخدم....لاجل	take place	يحدث
change into	يتحول إلى	compare..... with	يقارن....مع
agree on	يوافق على	speak about	يتحدث عن
hear about	يسمع عن	kind of	
sure about		try.....on	يعمل بروفه على

### Language Notes

1) in the end = finally = after effort

lost baby.

2) at the end:

Ex: A lot of people were weeping at the end of the film.

في الجزء الأخير

3) article:

Ex: Did you read the article on the space shuttle?

مقالة (في جريدة / مجلة لتناول أي موضوع)

4) review:

Ex: Did you read the review about the new film?

مقالة (نقدية عن عمل فني / أدبي)

5) respectable:

Ex: The English teacher is a respectable man.

شخص جدير بالاحترام / محترم

6) respectful:

Ex: What you did yesterday was really respectful.

سيرة ذاتية (عن حياة شخص)

Ex: I'm reading the biography about Naguib Mahfouz.

8) autobiography:

Ex: Taha Hussein wrote a very splendid autobiography.

سيرة ذاتية (يكتبها شخص عن نفسه)

9) profession:

Ex: Teaching is a hard profession.

10) job:

It is difficult to find a good job today.

11) scientist:

Ex: Dr. Ahmed Zewail is a great scientist.

12) man of letters:

Ex: Charles Dickens was a famous man of letters.

### The reported speech

• لتحويل جملة من كلام مباشر إلى كلام غير مباشر نتبع الآتي:

( \_\_ القول يحول كالاتي:

a) say>>>>>say

b) say to>>>>>tell

c) said>>>> said

d) said to>>> told

"that" و يمكن استخدامها أو لا.

{ إذا كان الفعل خارج الأقواس ماضي يحول الفعل داخل الأقواس من مضارع إلى  
{ إذا كانت الجملة داخل الأقواس حقائق علمية تبقى كما هي بدون تغيير الزمن.  
{ إذا كان فعل القول مضارع أو مستقبلي فلا تغيير في الأزمنة أو الظروف.  
{ ( and that) نستخدم

### TENSES CHANGES

- a) present simple>>>> past simple  
b) present continuous>> past continuous  
c) present perfect>>>> past perfect  
d) defective verbs present>>>> defective verbs past  
e) past simple>>>> past perfect

EX: 1) Ali said to me, "I will be a doctor." >>>> Ali told me he would be a doctor.

2) Dina says to me, "She cleans the flat." >>>> Dina told me she cleaned the flat.

3) The teacher said to us, "The earth goes round the sun."

• The teacher told us the earth goes round the sun.

لاحظ تحويل الظروف الزمنية إلى الكلام الغير مباشر

DIRECT	REPORTED	DIRECT	REPORTED
this	that	here	there
these	those	tomorrow	the following day/the next day/the day after
today	that day	next week	the following week/the coming week
tonight	that night	yesterday	the day before/the previous day
now	Then	last week	the week before
ago	before		

### 2) QUESTION

لتحويل جملة استفهامية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نتبع الآتي:  
( فعل القول يحول كالتالي:

- a) say>>>>> ask/ want to know/wonder  
b) said to>>>> asked/ enquired/wondered/wanted to know  
(or not)

(whether) "if/ whether"

{ ترفع الأقواس و نربط بنفس كلمة الاستفهام إذا كان السؤال يبدأ بكلمة استفهام.

EX: 1) Mary says "Is the weather good today?" >> Mary asks if the weather good today.

2) I said to Hany "Do you believe this story?" >> I asked Hany if he believed this story.

3) Heba said to Manal, "Where do you live?" >>>> Heba asked Manal where she lived.

### 3) ORDER, REQUEST AND ADVICE

• لتحويل الجملة الأمرية من مباشر إلى غير مباشر نتبع الآتي:  
( فعل القول يحول

- a) say>>> order/ tell  
b) said to>>>>> ordered/ told/asked/advised/warned ....  
"not to" "to"

EX:

1) I said to the servant, "Clean the room and shut the door."

I told the servant to clean the room and shut the door.

2) The mother said to the child, "Don't be afraid."

The mother told the child not to be afraid.

3) My father said to me, "Go and buy me the paper."

My father told me to go and buy him the paper.

### Unit 9: The power of nature

#### Idiomatic Expressions:

definitely not	لا يزال قلقا قليلا	still little worried
get heat and light from	يحصل على حرارة و ضوء من	there's nothing wrong with
give heat and light	يعطي حرارة و ضوء	ليس هناك عيب في
have problems with	لديه مشاكل مع	falling from the sky
at the centre of		all over the country
get too near	يقترب كثيرا جدا	في جميع انحاء الدولة
become too full	يصبح ممتلئ جدا	damage sight
from time to time		يؤدي / يضر البصر
		lift people off their feet
		give an explanation
		give a ray of hope
		يرفع الناس من اقدامهم
		يعطي تفسيرا
		يعطي شعاعا من الامل

#### Prepositions

harmful to	يعتمد على	depend on
warn about	يؤثر في	effect on
take in	يطلب	ask for
result in		better for
blown down	يسير حول	go round
block out	يأتي نحو	come towards

#### Language Notes

1) economic:

Ex: Europe is more than economic community.

2) economical:

Ex: Our use of the central heating is fairly economical.

3) opportunity:

Ex: I had the opportunity to thank my teachers.

Ex: Our son's wedding was a really memorable occasion.

5) sight:

Ex: The garden has a splendid sight.

6) view: (منظر طبيعي (تطل عليه و نراه من مكان محدد)

Ex: The view of the mountain from the hotel window is wonderful.

7) drown: (يغرق (للاشخاص) 8) sink: (يغوص (للاشياء / شيء يختفي تحت الماء)

Ex: It isn't strange that divers drown in the sea. Even the biggest ships can sink.

9) full: (ممتلئ (ليس به شواغر) 10) complete: (تام / كامل (انتهى العمل فيه)

Ex: The hotel was full of tourists. The cinema is complete with audiences.

### Conditional sentences

1) THE ZERO CASE: It express situations that are always true.

EX If water freezes, it turns into ice.

2) THE FIRST CASE: It expresses real possibilities.

Should = If EX: If I see an interesting book, I'll buy it. = Should I see .....

3) THE SECOND CASE: It expresses unlikely situations.

Were = If EX: If I met a lion, I would climb a tree. = Were I to meet .....

4) THE THIRD CASE: It expresses impossible situations..

Had = If EX: Had I worked hard, I would have passed my exam.

If = provided that = provided = as long as

a) You can borrow my book provided that you take care of it.

b) I will lend you my car provided you drive carefully.

c) You can watch TV as long as you finish your homework.

d) She'll get a good job as long as she gets high degree.

2) UNLESS = IF NOT = Except if: [3 CASES]

a) If she doesn't study, she will fail. [Unless]

Unless she studies, she will fail.

3) In case of / in the event of + (noun / verb + ing)

Ex: In case of being doctor, he would help her.

4) Without / but for + (noun / verb + ing)

Ex: Without their help, we would have lost much.

5) If it weren't for + (noun) → would + inf.

Ex: If it weren't for hard work, we wouldn't get high marks.

6) If it hadn't been for + (noun) → would + have + P.P

Ex: If it hadn't been for the computer, we wouldn't have achieved any progress.

Note the following:

Ex: He will come tomorrow. In that case we will discuss the matter. [If]

إذا كانت الجملتان مضارع بسيط منفي (افتراض حالي و غير حقيقي) نستخدم الحالة الثانية. و يتحول النفي إلى إثبات و إلا

Ex: I'm not a lawyer, so I can't defend him. [If]

إذا كانت الجملتان ماضي بسيط (افتراض مستحيل/عكسه تم في الماضي أو ندم) نستخدم الحالة الثالثة مع تحويل النفي إلى إثبات والعكس

Ex: He didn't get high marks because he didn't study hard. [If]

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (First Term)

1) The car stopped because there was a .....in the petrol tank.

a) lack b) leak c) lake d) leak

2) Our air conditioning has broken down, but someone is coming to .....it tomorrow.

a) destroy b) repair c) prepare d) examined

3) The doctor .....me carefully before he gave me the medicine.

a) tested b) checks c) examined d) advised

4) Computer passwords should always be ..... You should never tell anyone.

a) private b) special c) secretive d) secret

5) The astronauts went on a two-hour space .....to replace a broken fuel pump.

a) missions b) run c) jog d) walk

6) Some drivers have a sat-nav .....in their car to help them find the best route.

a) system b) style c) systematic d) devices

7) The rocket is going to reach the moon on Tuesday. Everyone watched the .....on TV.

a) lunch b) taking c) launching d) launch

8) Space .....can take several years.

a) walks b) fissions c) missions d) permissions

9) A: "This year, I'm going on holiday with my family to Italy." B: "I'm sure you .....it."

a) 'll enjoy b) 're enjoying c) enjoy d) 're going to enjoy

10) A: "Are you leaving this evening?" B: "Yes, my train .....at 7.15."

a) is going to leave b) leaves c) will leave d) is leaving

11) A: "Have you made any arrangements for next week?" B: "Yes, I ...a friend from Cairo on Monday."

a) 'll meet b) 'm meeting c) meet d) 'm going to meet

12) A: "Do you have any plans for the weekend?" B: "I .....Professor Afifi on Saturday morning."

a) meet b) 'm going to meet c) 'll meet d) am meeting

13) A: "I'm going on holiday to Europe this October. Should I take an umbrella?" B: Yes, .....

a) it's probably raining b) it probably rains c) it'll probably rain d) it is raining

14) The moon has less .....than the Earth, so you could jump much higher there.

a) gravity b) magnet c) sand d) pollution

15) Doing .....is a very good way of keeping fit.

a) gym b) gymnasium c) gymnastics d) gymnast

16) Two of the .....on the front wheel of my bike were broken in the accident.

a) spoons b) spoke c) spokes d) speaks

17) The .....between Cairo and London is 3,500 kilometres.

a) space b) distances c) diameter d) distance

18) When you are .....in space, it must be very difficult to stand still.

- a) thin                      b) light                      c) weightless                      d) float
- 19) ....., I'm working for important exams. Then, when I finish, I'm going on holiday.
- a) Currently                      b) Regularly                      c) Finally                      d) Permanently
- 20) My brother is a very .....man. He went to Cairo University and then Oxford.
- a) badly-educated                      b) well-educated                      c) good education                      d) bad education
- 21) We're having a .....at school next week about ways of reducing global warming.
- a) debt                      b) departure                      c) defeat                      d) debate
- 22) For some people, reading and watching films are forms of .....
- a) escaping                      b) violence                      c) escapism                      d) entertain
- 23) In the past, many English children studied ...at school. Now most schools teach modern languages.
- a) classics                      b) politics                      c) gymnastics                      d) physics
- 24) Oliver Twist is the .....hero of one of Charles Dickens's most famous novels.
- a) factual                      b) fiction                      c) frictional                      d) fictional
- 25) The Prisoner of Zenda was ready for .....a few months after Anthony Hope thought of the idea.
- a) publish                      b) establishment                      c) entertainment                      d) publication
- 26) Novels are usually works of ....., but they are often based on real life.
- a) fictional                      b) fiction                      c) reflection                      d) fact
- 27) Anthony Hope's first novel was .....in 1890.
- a) publication                      b) publishing                      c) established                      d) published
- 28) Films and books can sometimes help people to .....from their worries.
- a) escape                      b) overcome                      c) leave                      d) get rid
- 29) My brother had a good ..... He went to one of the best universities.
- a) educated                      b) educator                      c) educating                      d) education
- 30) You can still see a lot of .....architecture in Greece and Rome.
- a) classics                      b) classic                      c) classical                      d) class
- 31) Classics .....a required subject long ago.
- a) is                      b) are                      c) was                      d) were
- 32) People .....funny sometimes.
- a) is                      b) are                      c) was                      d) were
- 33) How .....seconds are in an hour?
- a) many                      b) much                      c) lot of                      d) few
- 34) Ten kilometres .....a long way to run.
- a) is                      b) has                      c) are                      d) have
- 35) One of the players in the blue team .....very tall.
- a) has                      b) plays                      c) are                      d) is
- 36) How many seconds .....in an hour?
- a) is                      b) are                      c) was                      d) were
- 37) Would you like .....?
- a) orange                      b) oranges                      c) the orange                      d) an orange
- 38) I don't like ..... I prefer red.
- a) orange                      b) oranges                      c) the orange                      d) an orange
- 39) could I have ....., please?
- a) the coffee                      b) a coffee                      c) a little coffees                      d) a cafe
- 40) .....can stop you sleeping.
- a) a coffee                      b) coffee                      c) the coffee                      d) coffees
- 41) I've got .....in my mouth.
- a) hair                      b) some hair                      c) a hair                      d) the hair
- 42) There's .....on the floor.
- a) hair                      b) a few hair                      c) much hairs                      d) the hair
- 43) Do you like .....or meat?
- a) a chicken                      b) chickens                      c) chicken                      d) the chicken
- 44) Do you like .....or ducks?
- a) a chicken                      b) chickens                      c) chicken                      d) the chicken
- 45) Although everyone in my family works very hard, we are not a .....family.
- a) wealthy                      b) wealth                      c) riches                      d) healthy
- 46) In Britain, children .....primary school between the ages of 5 and 11.
- a) intend                      b) pretend                      c) attain                      d) attend
- 47) The .....of Queen Elizabeth II took place in 1952. It was a fantastic occasion: millions of people went to London to watch.
- a) ceremony                      b) coordination                      c) cooperation                      d) coronation
- 48) Nobody has the .....to steal things from other people.
- a) wright                      b) rite                      c) right                      d) write
- 49) Some twins are more .....than others.
- a) same                      b) a like                      c) like                      d) alike
- 50) .....were usually made from stone to stop attackers from breaking in.
- a) Palaces                      b) Houses                      c) Temples                      d) Castles
- 51) Water is the .....form of ice.
- a) liquid                      b) solid                      c) molten                      d) soft
- 52) You send a liquid or gas through a .....to move it to another place.
- a) tubes                      b) pipe                      c) tunnel                      d) tower
- 53) Electricity is produced in a/an .....station.
- a) energy                      b) strength                      c) force                      d) power
- 54) .....is the force produced when two things push against each other.
- a) Gravity                      b) Pressure                      c) Stress                      d) Pleasure
- 55) .....is a black fossil fuel from underground.

- a) Oil                      b) Cool                      c) Gas                      d) Coal
- 56) When atoms are split, .....energy is produced.  
a) geothermal              b) automatic              c) nuclear                  d) hydroelectric
- 57) If you make rock or metal very hot, it becomes .....  
a) melted                      b) liquid                      c) molten                      d) solid
- 58) In many countries, the wind .....to generate electricity.  
a) are used                      b) used                      c) is used                      d) uses
- 59) Scientists .....to find more forms of renewable energy.  
a) want                      b) are wanted              c) wanting                  d) had wanted
- 60) Huge amounts of energy .....in nuclear power stations.  
a) are produced              b) produced                  c) is produced              d) producing
- 61) Holes .....into the earth to find hot water.  
a) drill                      b) have drilled              c) drilled                      d) are drilled
- 62) In some cities, rubbish .....to produce electricity.  
a) burns                      b) is burnt                      c) is burning                  d) are burnt
- 63) Water passing through a dam produces .....power.  
a) hydroelectric              b) geothermal              c) nuclear                      d) electric
- 64) Burying .....in the ground can damage the environment.  
a) waste                      b) foil                      c) fossil                      d) paper
- 65) Modern .....are tall towers which are built where there is a lot of wind.  
a) gases                      b) wind turbines              c) skyscrapers              d) solar panels
- 66) Many countries are now using more .....forms of energy from the sun and wind.  
a) non-renewable              b) old                      c) ancient                      d) renewable
- 67) .....like oil and gas are found under the ground.  
a) Fossil fuels                  b) Fossils                      c) Renewable fuels              d) Geothermal energy
- 68) Power stations .....electricity.  
a) produces                      b) do                      c) consume                      d) generate
- 69) Millions of people watched the rocket .....on TV.  
a) start                      b) launch                      c) set off                      d) beginning
- 70) The medicine I'm taking is wonderful. It has no side .....  
a) results                      b) damage                      c) effects                      d) problems
- 71) My brother and I are not twins, but we are very .....  
a) alike                      b) same                      c) like                      d) correct
- 72) Coal and oil are two kinds of fossil .....  
a) petrol                      b) gas                      c) energy                      d) fuels
- 73) Electricity is produced in a/an .....station.  
a) bus                      b) railway                      c) power                      d) energy
- 74) I expect .....you at the weekend.  
a) I'm going to see              b) I'll see                      c) I'm seeing                  d) I see
- 75) The film .....at 7.30 this evening.  
a) starts                      b) will start                      c) started                      d) is going to start
- 76) How .....times have you seen that film?  
a) many                      b) much                      c) lots                      d) different
- 77) The distance from here to Cairo .....two kilometres.  
a) are                      b) has been                      c) is                      d) is being
- 78) In some places, wood .....to heat people's homes.  
a) are burnt                      b) burns                      c) burnt                      d) is burnt
- 79) Early black and white photos show people in .....clothes.  
a) fashionable                  b) old-fashioned              c) smart                      d) ancient
- 80) The sun is at its strongest at .....  
a) mid-night                      b) mid-year                      c) mid-day                      d) mid-summer
- 81) I don't really have a .....during the holidays.  
a) route                      b) custom                      c) habit                      d) routine
- 82) My friends and I are going to enter an athletics ..... We all hope to win something.  
a) competition                  b) disagreement              c) exam                      d) debate
- 83) I sent an e-mail with two ..... They were photos of my friends.  
a) additions                      b) attachments              c) notes                      d) forms
- 84) This book .....by a famous writer.  
a) wrote                      b) written                      c) was written                  d) is written
- 85) I .....reading novels since I was a young child.  
a) enjoyed                      b) have enjoyed              c) had enjoyed                  d) used to enjoy
- 86) Yesterday, my sister gave me a book she .....reading the day before.  
a) finished                      b) has finished              c) finishes                      d) had finished
- 87) It .....while I was reading the newspaper.  
a) delivered                      b) was delivering              c) was delivered                  d) has delivered
- 88) I .....at least one book a week, but now I don't read so many.  
a) used to read                  b) was reading                  c) used to reading              d) am used to reading
- 89) I .....the newspaper every day. Now I don't have the time.  
a) was reading                  b) used to read                  c) have read                      d) am used to reading
- 90) As soon as we arrived at school, the first lesson .....  
a) had begun                      b) was beginning              c) has begun                      d) began
- 91) I .....the film before I read the book.  
a) already saw                  b) have already seen              c) 'd already seen              d) was already seeing
- 92) What .....when I called you? You sounded very busy.  
a) did you do                      b) were you doing              c) had you done                  d) have you done

- 93) I .....my own computer for three years now.  
a) 've had                      b) had                      c) have                      d) am having
- 94) While she .....her homework, my sister was listening to music.  
a) was doing                      b) used to do                      c) did                      d) had done
- 95) I really enjoyed this book. It is written in a very simple .....  
a) shape                      b) style                      c) fashion                      d) publication
- 96) Yehia Haqqi came from a poor .....of Cairo.  
a) outskirts                      b) city                      c) district                      d) distinct
- 97) My brother wants to be a lawyer when he graduates, so he's studying .....at university.  
a) lawyer                      b) classics                      c) law                      d) law
- 98) Magdi Yacoub was one of the first heart transplant .....  
a) surgeon                      b) pioneers                      c) donors                      d) operations
- 99) In my grandfather's village, they still follow the same traditional .....that he used to follow when he was a boy.  
a) custom                      b) habits                      c) routines                      d) customs
- 100) Scientists are paid to .....new medicines every year to help people.  
a) experience                      b) identify                      c) develop                      d) apply
- 101) My sister loves clothes and buys very .....dresses.  
a) fashion                      b) old-fashioned                      c) fashioned                      d) fashionable
- 102) His first job was as a .....  
a) lawyer                      b) law                      c) lawful                      d) lawfully
- 103) A .....is someone who produces books, newspapers or magazines.  
a) publish                      b) publication                      c) published                      d) publisher
- 104) My parents gave me a .....of modern short stories for my birthday.  
a) collect                      b) collection                      c) collective                      d) collector
- 105) Yehia Haqqi was an important twentieth-century .....  
a) writer                      b) lawyer                      c) diplomat                      d) politician
- 106) Many children are .....about talking to their teacher when they first go to school.  
a) ashamed                      b) spy                      c) shy                      d) bad
- 107) All the fish in the river have died. Someone must have put .....in the water.  
a) mousetrap                      b) poison                      c) salt                      d) ice
- 108) A man has been found dead in the road. The police think it was an accident, not .....  
a) spy                      b) murderer                      c) fictional                      d) murder
- 109) He banged his head and is now suffering from .....  
a) nausea                      b) amnesia                      c) dizzy                      d) insomnia
- 110) After they saw the mouse, they decided to put a .....in the kitchen.  
a) mousetrap                      b) poison                      c) cat                      d) spy
- 111) Archaeologists are planning a new .....in the south of the country.  
a) mission                      b) experiment                      c) exploration                      d) excavation
- 112) Police are looking for someone who stole a car yesterday. The main .....is a man in his forties.  
a) guilty                      b) innocent                      c) suspect                      d) murderer
- 113) They are using a very powerful .....to send signals to the astronauts.  
a) microphone                      b) transmitter                      c) mobile                      d) torch
- 114) Working as a .....in a foreign country can be a very dangerous job.  
a) spy                      b) agent                      c) diplomat                      d) politician
- 115) In many countries, people have to carry an .....card to prove who they are.  
a) credit                      b) credit                      c) visa                      d) identity
- 116) In Britain in the 1940s, people were afraid of an .....by the enemy.  
a) invasion                      b) inversion                      c) envision                      d) incision
- 117) The Romans .....Britain in 43 BCE.  
a) competed                      b) invaded                      c) congratulated                      d) supported
- 118) We saw a lot of photographs, but we couldn't .....the man we'd met.  
a) identify                      b) satisfy                      c) purify                      d) liquefy
- 119) How did the man prove his .....?  
a) guilt                      b) crime                      c) spying                      d) innocence
- 120) The enemy used radios to .....messages to their ships.  
a) signal                      b) transport                      c) transmit                      d) sail
- 121) They .....that the driver had been going very fast at the time of the accident.  
a) suspect                      b) sure                      c) are believed                      d) told
- 122) The .....are the parts of trees that grow under the ground and find water.  
a) branches                      b) barks                      c) roots                      d) leaves
- 123) The hard outside part of a tree is called the .....  
a) trunk                      b) park                      c) root                      d) bark
- 124) .....are the flat green parts at the ends of the branches of a tree.  
a) Roots                      b) Barks                      c) fruits                      d) Leaves
- 125) A .....grows on a plant or tree and has seeds inside.  
a) leaf                      b) fruit                      c) bark                      d) root
- 126) Every year, trees grow extra .....of new wood.  
a) ring                      b) bark                      c) trunk                      d) root
- 127) If the bark is badly damaged, the tree .....  
a) die                      b) will die                      c) dies                      d) died
- 128) You .....see the rings if you cut the tree down.  
a) see                      b) can see                      c) would see                      d) saw
- 129) If there is a lot of rain during the year, the rings .....quite wide.  
a) is                      b) will be                      c) have                      d) are

- 130) If it .....a dry year, the rings are narrower.  
a) will be                      b) were                      c) is                      d) was
- 131) If those goats eat the bark on my trees, the trees .....  
a) will die                      b) die                      c) died                      d) had died
- 132) If water ....., it turns to ice.  
a) are frozen                      b) is freezing                      c) freezes                      d) will freeze
- 133) If people .....enough food, they become ill.  
a) didn't get                      b) won't get                      c) hadn't got                      d) don't get
- 134) If it goes on raining for much longer, the river .....  
a) will flood                      b) floods                      c) flooded                      d) would flood
- 135) If the farmer's fields .....very dry this summer, he will irrigate them.  
a) gets                      b) will get                      c) got                      d) get
- 136) When I was at school I won a poetry writing .....  
a) race                      b) article                      c) competition                      d) game
- 137) She sent me the report as an e-mail .....  
a) attachment                      b) letter                      c) picture                      d) article
- 138) The little girl does not want to sing because she is .....  
a) innocent                      b) secret                      c) spy                      d) shy
- 139) My favourite musical .....is the piano.  
a) player                      b) instrument                      c) tool                      d) equipment
- 140) The cover of my book is made of .....  
a) glass                      b) rubber                      c) cardboard                      d) wood
- 141) We arrived half an hour late. The film .....half an hour earlier.  
a) began                      b) was beginning                      c) had begun                      d) has begun
- 142) Agatha Christie's books .....into more than 40 languages.  
a) have been translated                      b) have translated                      c) translated                      d) were being translated
- 143) The Romans .....Petra nearly two thousand years ago.  
a) have captured                      b) were captured                      c) captured                      d) had captured
- 144) Your train leaves in ten minutes. If you hurry, you .....it.  
a) catch                      b) will catch                      c) would catch                      d) are catching
- 145) If I am thirsty, .....water.  
a) I will drink                      b) I would drink                      c) I am drinking                      d) I drank
- 146) My father studied .....at university and has designed many important bridges.  
a) literature                      b) classics                      c) engineering                      d) law
- 147) Education is an/a .....in the future of a country and its young people.  
a) escapism                      b) investment                      c) wish                      d) fiction
- 148) Nearly four million .....travel to and from London every day.  
a) passenger                      b) travellers                      c) attendants                      d) commuters
- 149) The Great Wall of China was a/an .....project which took hundreds of years to complete.  
a) investment                      b) massive                      c) mass                      d) positive
- 150) That tunnel has a ..... of 7.6 metres.  
a) size                      b) width                      c) diameter                      d) diagram
- 151) The quickest way to get to the city centre is to .....an underground train.  
a) come                      b) go                      c) get                      d) take
- 152) A journey on the underground .....one pound.  
a) costs                      b) pays                      c) saves                      d) takes
- 153) People can .....money by travelling on the underground.  
a) keep                      b) safe                      c) pay                      d) save
- 154) The first line of the Paris Metro system .....in 1900.  
a) started                      b) opened                      c) established                      d) constructed
- 155) There .....a sandstorm. The streets are covered in sand.  
a) must be                      b) can't be                      c) must have been                      d) can't have been
- 156) A: I don't know where my school bag is, Mum. B: It's not here. You .....it on the train.  
a) might have left                      b) can't have left                      c) must leave                      d) might leave
- 157) A: Look, Hesham's keys are on the table. B: He .....them when he left this morning.  
a) can't see                      b) must have seen                      c) might have seen                      d) can't have seen
- 158) A: I rang you this morning, but you didn't answer. B: Sorry, I .....asleep.  
a) must be                      b) can't be                      c) must have been                      d) can't have been
- 159) A: He's only been in the laboratory for ten minutes. B: Surely he .....his experiment already.  
a) can't finish                      b) can't have finished                      c) must finish                      d) must have finished
- 160) A: Ali fell off his bike this morning. Do you know if he's OK? B: His mother says he .....his arm.  
a) must have broken                      b) can't break                      c) might have broken                      d) must break
- 161) The height of the .....is 25 metres.  
a) cliff                      b) mountain                      c) valley                      d) tunnel
- 162) The artist .....the sculpture from a massive piece of stone.  
a) curved                      b) cured                      c) carved                      d) captured
- 163) At night, bright lights always .....the front of the palace.  
a) eliminate                      b) shine                      c) illustrate                      d) illuminate
- 164) If you want to ask the teacher a question, you should .....your hand.  
a) rise                      b) position                      c) raise                      d) arouse
- 165) The Sphinx is .....near the Pyramids of Giza.  
a) positioned                      b) raised                      c) locating                      d) founded
- 166) The statue of the pharaoh is a famous ancient .....  
a) moment                      b) mummy                      c) monument                      d) place
- 167) The statue is built on a hard .....made of concrete.

- a) surfaces                      b) soil                      c) cliff                      d) base
- 168) A: I think this structure was built about 200 years ago.  
B: It .....very difficult. Those pieces of metal look incredibly heavy.
- a) can't have been                      b) must have been                      c) might have been                      d) should have been
- 169) A: Do you think they made the pieces nearby or brought them from somewhere else?  
B: They .....brought them very far. They're too big.
- a) must have                      b) can't have                      c) might have                      d) can't
- 170) A: They .....them by boat. The boat would have sunk!
- a) can't bring                      b) must have brought                      c) might have brought                      d) can't have brought
- 171) They brought these huge stones from miles. It .....hard work for a lot of people.
- a) might have been                      b) can't have been                      c) must have been                      d) should have been
- 172) My brother went on holiday to Aswan. Now he's decided to live there .....
- a) permanently                      b) temporarily                      c) regularly                      d) finally
- 173) I thought the test would be easy, but I must ....., I'm finding it quite difficult.
- a) confess                      b) apologise                      c) admit                      d) blame
- 174) Someone .....on our door late last night, but I didn't open it.
- a) locked                      b) smashed                      c) broke                      d) knocked
- 175) Doctors and nurses belong to the medical .....
- a) treatment                      b) profession                      c) care                      d) operations
- 176) All my friends come from very .....families.
- a) respected                      b) respect                      c) respectable                      d) respecting
- 177) My grandfather .....at the moment after a long illness.
- a) is recuperated                      b) is recuperating                      c) had recuperated                      d) will recuperate
- 178) I'm reading a new .....of William Shakespeare. He had a very interesting life.
- a) autobiography                      b) autography                      c) biography                      d) biographical
- 179) Ali wasn't badly injured in the accident, but his .....took longer than we thought.
- a) illness                      b) recuperation                      c) health                      d) operation
- 180) I've worked in a lot of different places. Now I'd like a more .....job.
- a) permanent                      b) temporary                      c) regular                      d) finally
- 181) You can find .....information about many writers on the internet.
- a) biography                      b) biographical                      c) private                      d) secret
- 182) When he said sorry, it was an/a .....that he had been wrong.
- a) admission                      b) admittance                      c) confession                      d) confusion
- 183) I .....people who are honest and work hard.
- a) admit                      b) object                      c) recuperate                      d) respect
- 184) If you are a doctor, it's very important to behave .....towards your patients.
- a) professionally                      b) conscientious                      c) fashionably                      d) dramatically
- 185) She .....that she had waited for more than an hour for her appointment.
- a) asked                      b) wondered                      c) complained                      d) told
- 186) They promised that they .....us as soon as they arrived.
- a) will phone                      b) phoned                      c) had phoned                      d) would phone
- 187) He .....that he had arrived late the night before.
- a) advised                      b) wanted to know                      c) admitted                      d) apologized
- 188) She explained that she .....to come and see me the following week.
- a) will hope                      b) is going to hope                      c) hopes                      d) was hoping
- 189) He agreed he would not tell anyone what I .....
- a) will say                      b) have said                      c) was saying                      d) had said
- 190) He asked me .....that his sister had been ill.
- a) why I knew                      b) if did I know                      c) if I knew                      d) what I knew
- 191) We wanted to know what .....of his idea.
- a) they thought                      b) do they think                      c) had they thought                      d) they were thought
- 192) Nadia wanted to know if I .....anything interesting at the weekend.
- a) will do                      b) was doing                      c) am going to do                      d) would have done
- 193) I .....that I didn't have any plans.
- a) promised                      b) warned                      c) wondered                      d) admitted
- 194) Nadia wants to know if I .....like to go shopping with her.
- a) will                      b) would                      c) can                      d) could
- 195) I .....that I would have to ask my mother.
- a) explained                      b) exclaimed                      c) told                      d) asked
- 196) Nadia asked me .....her to tell her what she said.
- a) if I can phone                      b) whether I will phone                      c) not to phone                      d) to phone
- 197) I promised .....her that evening.
- a) to phone                      b) I will phone                      c) that I can phone                      d) to phoning
- 198) She has a very nice ..... She is kind to everyone she meets.
- a) personally                      b) personality                      c) identity                      d) person
- 199) People who .....serious crimes should be sent to prison.
- a) comment                      b) combat                      c) commit                      d) commute
- 200) He left everything to his son in his .....
- a) wish                      b) well                      c) death                      d) will
- 201) When my brother started his new job, all his .....were friendly and helpful.
- a) neighbours                      b) colleges                      c) classmates                      d) colleagues
- 202) If you are going for a job interview, your .....is important. You must look your best.
- a) personality                      b) behaviour                      c) appearance                      d) colleague
- 203) Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde .....place in London.
- a) blackmails                      b) makes                      c) takes                      d) gives

- 204) Dr Jekyll was .....research into human nature.  
a) doing                      b) making                      c) experimenting                      d) playing
- 205) He started .....experiments on himself.  
a) carrying                      b) performing                      c) doing                      d) making
- 206) He .....a special medicine for himself.  
a) did                      b) took                      c) gave                      d) made
- 207) When he .....the medicine, he changed into Mr Hyde.  
a) did                      b) took                      c) gave                      d) made
- 208) The medicine .....him do terrible things.  
a) made                      b) allowed                      c) took                      d) forced
- 209) The best thing about our holiday to Iceland was our visit to the see the .....  
a) Nile                      b) High Dam                      c) water                      d) geyser
- 210) If it rains so hard that the soil cannot .....the water quickly enough, there are floods.  
a) take on                      b) absorb                      c) supply                      d) drink
- 211) When there is an .....of the sun, everything goes dark and the birds stop singing.  
a) illumination                      b) ultra-violet rays                      c) eclipse                      d) invisible
- 212) You cannot see ....., but they can still damage your skin.  
a) viruses                      b) ultra-violet rays                      c) dust grains                      d) geysers
- 213) She does not need to wear glasses. There is nothing wrong with her .....  
a) site                      b) visibility                      c) illusion                      d) sight
- 214) If it .....so heavily, we wouldn't have had floods.  
a) didn't rain                      b) had rained                      c) would rain                      d) hadn't rained
- 215) Would you go to the moon if you .....?  
a) asked                      b) had asked                      c) would ask                      d) were asked
- 216) If it is very hot tomorrow, we .....to the beach.  
a) would go                      b) don't go                      c) wouldn't go                      d) won't go
- 217) People who live near volcanoes leave home if they .....  
a) will erupt                      b) would erupt                      c) erupt                      d) erupted
- 218) If I were you, I .....to the weather forecast before deciding where to go tomorrow.  
a) 'll listen                      b) 'd listened                      c) 'd have listened                      d) 'd listen
- 219) If the storm had reached the city, houses and shops .....  
a) are destroyed                      b) would have been destroyed                      c) would have destroyed                      d) will be destroyed
- 220) Scientists are not sure what .....volcanoes to erupt.  
a) reasons                      b) makes                      c) causes                      d) lets
- 221) Greece and Spain are in .....Europe.  
a) southern                      b) northern                      c) eastern                      d) western
- 222) An eclipse of the sun is a strange natural .....  
a) process                      b) phenomenon                      c) phenomena                      d) experiment
- 223) Storms can .....at any time and in any place.  
a) happening                      b) took place                      c) occur                      d) accident
- 224) It has not rained here for five months. It is the longest .....anyone can remember.  
a) draught                      b) flood                      c) starvation                      d) drought
- 225) When I was a child, I used to be afraid of storms. I covered my eyes so that I could not see the....  
a) lightning                      b) thunder                      c) crash                      d) earthquake
- 226) Alexandria is in the .....of Egypt.  
a) northern                      b) northerly                      c) north's                      d) north
- 227) Electrical storms are a common .....in our part of the country.  
a) occurrence                      b) occurred                      c) occurring                      d) occur
- 228) Those trees have grown .....tall in the last two years.  
a) phenomenon                      b) phenomenally                      c) phenomenal                      d) phenomena
- 229) Where we live, the wind usually blows in a .....direction.  
a) southern                      b) south                      c) south's                      d) southerly
- 230) Very .....temperatures can make people ill.  
a) big                      b) high                      c) violent                      d) strong
- 231) Dunwich was destroyed by .....waves and violent storms.  
a) tall                      b) high                      c) violent                      d) strong
- 232) Storms can cause .....damage.  
a) serious                      b) strong                      c) weak                      d) slightly
- 233) .....rain and strong winds destroyed buildings all over the country.  
a) High                      b) Big                      c) Heavy                      d) Strong
- 234) Too much sun can be .....  
a) respectable                      b) harmful                      c) unthinkable                      d) in conflict
- 235) We .....on the door three times, but they did not hear us.  
a) visited                      b) called                      c) hit                      d) knocked
- 236) Nurses are part of the medical .....  
a) profession                      b) work                      c) job                      d) career
- 237) I get on well with all my .....at work, but they are not close friends.  
a) people                      b) workers                      c) colleagues                      d) relatives
- 238) The accident .....at eight o'clock when everyone was on their way to work.  
a) occurred                      b) took                      c) came                      d) caused
- 239) They left two hours ago, so they .....arrived by now. It is not far.  
a) must                      b) must have                      c) have                      d) can't have
- 240) No one is sure where Ali is, but we think he .....gone to see his uncle.  
a) must                      b) can't have                      c) might have                      d) must have
- 241) She asked me whether .....there before.

- a) I had been      b) I went      c) I go      d) had I been  
 242) If .....for too long, I get a headache.
- a) I'll read      b) I read      c) I had read      d) I would read  
 243) If you had come ten minutes later, I .....
- a) would leave      b) will leave      c) leave      d) would have left  
 244) This medicine is safe. There are no .....
- a) top effects      b) side effects      c) leaks      d) waste  
 245) I'm going to have lunch with friends tomorrow. We are .....at the restaurant at 12.30.
- a) going to meet      b) would meet      c) will meet      d) meet  
 246) The .....between Cairo and my town is 650 kilometres.
- a) district      b) area      c) distance      d) space  
 247) It is hard to walk in space because there is no .....
- a) gravity      b) waiting      c) spin      d) air  
 248) In Britain, children .....secondary school from the age of 11.
- a) go      b) intend      c) share      d) attend  
 249) Most furniture .....from wood.
- a) made      b) is made      c) make      d) makes  
 250) Many people .....vegetables in their gardens.
- a) growing      b) are grown      c) grow      d) is grown  
 251) In very hot weather, ice cream turns to .....
- a) water      b) soft      c) liquid      d) solid  
 252) We call oil and coal .....fuels.
- a) fossil      b) old      c) renewable      d) waste  
 253) She .....an archaeologist when she leaves university. That is her plan.
- a) will become      b) am becoming      c) is going to become      d) become  
 254) He is flying to London at the weekend. His flight .....at 5.30 in the morning.
- a) leaving      b) leaves      c) left      d) leave  
 255) We don't have .....time. We'll have to hurry.
- a) many      b) some      c) a lot      d) much  
 256) My friend and I look very different, but our personalities are .....
- a) alike      b) same      c) common      d) like  
 257) Six months .....half a year.
- a) are      b) is      c) be      d) am  
 258) The walls of the .....were built to protect the town.
- a) pyramid      b) mission      c) castle      d) house  
 259) I am writing .....that my teacher asked for.
- a) essay      b) a essay      c) the essay      d) that essay  
 260) I expect I .....you at the weekend.
- a) am going to see      b) am seeing      c) 'll see      d) see  
 261) After the accident, the doctor .....her to check she was not injured.
- a) examined      b) looked at      c) tested      d) studied  
 262) Do you have .....free time this afternoon?
- a) a      b) the      c) many      d) any  
 263) We went to the opening of a new school last week. It was a very interesting .....
- a) occasion      b) time      c) view      d) situation  
 264) Petrol .....from oil.
- a) made      b) is made      c) makes      d) are made  
 265) Wind and wave power are types of .....energy.
- a) new      b) waste      c) renewable      d) cheap  
 266) When I was younger, I .....go swimming every day.
- a) usually      b) used      c) use      d) used to  
 267) My sister .....at university for three years. She comes home every weekend.
- a) is      b) has been      c) is being      d) had been  
 268) The police think he did it. He is the main .....
- a) suspect      b) pioneer      c) publisher      d) agent  
 269) I really enjoy reading Agatha Christie novels. I particularly like her .....
- a) way      b) style      c) system      d) design  
 270) It .....that air travel will become more popular in the future.
- a) is thought      b) was thought      c) thought      d) thinks  
 271) He did nothing wrong. He's.....
- a) suspect      b) guilty      c) innocent      d) sensible  
 272) If he doesn't get eight hours sleep every night, he .....really tired the next day.
- a) will feel      b) feels      c) would feel      d) is feeling  
 273) If I have any free time tomorrow, .....for a walk in the park.
- a) I went      b) I go      c) I'd go      d) I'll go  
 274) The piano is our favourite musical .....
- a) tool      b) instrument      c) equipment      d) device  
 275) Her uncle can't remember his accident. The doctor thinks he may have .....
- a) a headache      b) phobia      c) amnesia      d) injury  
 276) Don't worry. I'm sure .....them again soon.
- a) you see      b) you're seeing      c) you'll see      d) you're going to see  
 277) Wanting friends is part of human .....
- a) nature      b) conflict      c) will      d) life  
 278) They have just received this photo as an e-mail .....
- a) post      b) attachment      c) letter      d) part

- 279) Lightning is a dangerous but natural .....  
a) sight                      b) response                      c) eclipse                      d) phenomenon  
280) She didn't see her brother this morning. He .....the flat very early.  
a) must have left                      b) must leave                      c) can't have left                      d) can't leave  
281) He left his glasses at school yesterday. I'm hoping someone .....found them.  
a) must have                      b) might have                      c) can't have                      d) can have  
282) The quickest way for Sawsan to get to school is to .....a train.  
a) go                      b) bring                      c) come                      d) take  
283) That plant has been .....so that it gets lots of light.  
a) explored                      b) raised                      c) positioned                      d) put  
284) Taha's mother asked him where .....  
a) he had been                      b) had he been                      c) has he been                      d) he has been  
285) She promised she .....me as soon as the plane landed.  
a) will phone                      b) phoned                      c) would phone                      d) phones  
286) Is that someone .....on our door? I'll see who it is.  
a) hitting                      b) knocking                      c) smashing                      d) beating  
287) Their uncle is a scientist. He's .....research into new forms of energy.  
a) making                      b) taking                      c) getting                      d) doing  
288) If you .....earlier, you wouldn't have missed your train.  
a) had left                      b) leave                      c) would have left                      d) left  
289) .....you work harder, you'll fail your exam.  
a) If                      b) Unless                      c) When                      d) As  
290) I'm hot today. How about .....to the beach?  
a) gone                      b) going                      c) went                      d) go  
291) Accidents .....more frequently when the roads are busy.  
a) take part                      b) come in                      c) cause                      d) occur

*answers*

1-d	2-b	3-c	4-d	5-d	6-a	7-d	8-c	9-a	10-b
11-b	12-b	13-c	14-a	15-c	16-c	17-d	18-c	19-a	20-b
21-d	22-c	23-a	24-d	25-d	26-b	27-d	28-a	29-d	30-c
31-c	32-b	33-a	34-a	35-d	36-b	37-d	38-a	39-b	40-b
41-c	42-a	43-c	44-b	45-a	46-d	47-d	48-c	49-d	50-d
51-a	52-b	53-d	54-b	55-d	56-c	57-c	58-c	59-a	60-a
61-d	62-b	63-a	64-a	65-b	66-d	67-a	68-d	69-b	70-c
71-a	72-d	73-c	74-b	75-a	76-a	77-c	78-d	79-b	80-c
81-d	82-a	83-b	84-c	85-b	86-d	87-c	88-a	89-b	90-d
91-c	92-b	93-a	94-a	95-b	96-c	97-d	98-b	99-d	100-c
101-d	102-a	103-d	104-b	105-a	106-c	107-b	108-d	109-b	110-a
111-d	112-c	113-b	114-a	115-d	116-a	117-b	118-a	119-d	120-c
121-a	122-c	123-d	124-d	125-b	126-a	127-c	128-b	129-d	130-c
131-a	132-c	133-d	134-a	135-d	136-c	137-a	138-d	139-b	140-c
141-c	142-a	143-c	144-b	145-a	146-c	147-b	148-d	149-b	150-c
151-d	152-a	153-d	154-b	155-c	156-a	157-d	158-c	159-b	160-c
161-a	162-c	163-d	164-c	165-a	166-c	167-d	168-b	169-b	170-d
171-c	172-a	173-c	174-d	175-b	176-c	177-b	178-c	179-b	180-a
181-b	182-a	183-d	184-a	185-c	186-d	187-c	188-d	189-d	190-c
191-a	192-b	193-d	194-b	195-a	196-d	197-a	198-b	199-c	200-d
201-d	202-c	203-c	204-a	205-c	206-d	207-b	208-a	209-d	210-b
211-c	212-b	213-d	214-d	215-d	216-d	217-c	218-d	219-b	220-c
221-a	222-b	223-c	224-d	225-a	226-d	227-a	228-b	229-d	230-b
231-b	232-a	233-c	234-b	235-d	236-a	237-c	238-a	239-b	240-c
241-a	242-b	243-d	244-b	245-a	246-c	247-a	248-d	249-b	250-c
251-c	252-a	253-c	254-b	255-d	256-a	257-b	258-c	259-c	260-c
261-a	262-d	263-a	264-b	265-c	266-d	267-b	268-a	269-b	270-a
271-c	272-b	273-d	274-b	275-c	276-c	277-a	278-b	279-d	280-a
281-b	282-d	283-c	284-a	285-c	286-b	287-d	2288-a	289-b	290-b
291-d									

*First term mistakes*

- 1) Five litres of petrol are enough for me to get to work.
- 2) My five-year-old sister will start a school in September.
- 3) The police is going to get new uniforms.
- 4) Fifty degrees are a very high temperature.
- 5) Athletics were my father's favourite sport.
- 6) The team usually win.
- 7) I've decided that I'm doing more exercise in the future.
- 8) It's a really good film. I'm sure you enjoy it.
- 9) Thirty kilometres are a long way to walk in hot weather.
- 10) Millions of cars produce by Japanese companies every year.
- 11) In many countries, children take the right to go to school until the age of 16.
- 12) Electricity is produced in energy stations.
- 13) Much things can go wrong with a car engine.
- 14) Many lives will be save by the devices.
- 15) Sat-nav systems is very useful for many drivers.
- 16) Thirty kilometres are a long way to travel on one litre of petrol.
- 17) How many petrol does your car use?
- 18) Twenty million people saw the new film already.

- 19) My parents use to live in a small flat in the city centre.
- 20) Yesterday evening, we revised for our English test when all the lights went out.
- 21) I'd attended this school for five years.
- 22) Our school was opening exactly 25 years ago today.
- 23) She played the piano since the age of six and she still plays every day.
- 24) Amnesia is being able to remember.
- 25) Excavation is digging up the ground to find things from the present.
- 26) Murder is the crime of hurting someone.
- 27) Poison is something that may taste or harm you if you eat or drink it.
- 28) Shy is nervous and embarrassed about writing to other people.
- 29) Mousetrap is equipment for feeding mice.
- 30) If you leave now, you catch your train.
- 31) Water will freeze if the temperature is zero or below.
- 32) If you throw that stone, you break a window.
- 33) I get a headache if I spent too long on the computer.
- 34) If she trains hard, she wins next week's race.
- 35) If you'll mix red and white, you get pink.
- 36) My father loves his job. He worked for the same company for 20 years.
- 37) When I was younger, I use to want to be a pilot.
- 38) If you kick the ball too hard, you break that window.
- 39) The Mousetrap written by Agatha Christie.
- 40) Travelling by plane sometimes makes me a headache.
- 41) The street where I live is only three metres width.
- 42) Life on Earth depends on heat and light from the moon.
- 43) The sun is made of hot rock.
- 44) The distance between the sun and the Earth is 150 thousand kilometres.
- 45) The temperature at the surface of the sun is 15 million degrees.
- 46) The atmosphere releases most of the sun's harmful rays.
- 47) You can look at the sun safely if you are wearing sunglasses.
- 48) Cause is to make something disappear.
- 49) Phenomenon is something usual that happens.
- 50) Southern is in or from the north part of a country or area.
- 51) Lightning is the noise you see during an electrical storm.
- 52) Occur is to make.
- 53) Drought is a long period of rain.
- 54) I'm not sure how well I did in the test at school today, but I think I pass.
- 55) You can't have been very thirsty. There's no orange juice left in the bottle.
- 56) I asked him where had he been all morning.
- 57) If it had been too hot, we wouldn't go to the beach.
- 58) What about go shopping this afternoon?
- 59) How in earth is it possible to irrigate the desert?
- 60) She's going meet her sister in town.
- 61) I fixed the lake in the petrol tank.
- 62) How many time do I need to drive to the city centre?
- 63) Oil and gas are find under the ground.
- 64) Water is the solid form of ice.
- 65) The married team went to Italy on their honeymoon.
- 66) I need to get fit, so I've made a decision. I do more exercise.
- 67) The Prisoner of Zenda was wrote by Anthony Hope.
- 68) We moved to this house two years ago today, so we lived here for exactly two years.
- 69) Before I entered the university, I had to show my credit card.
- 70) If you heat water, it melts.
- 71) Ra'fat El-Haggan and Goma'a El-Shawwan were very famous Egyptian kings.
- 72) Let's try to find them. They can't have went very far.
- 73) Teachers and supervisors belong to the teaching confession.
- 74) He asked me if saw his newspaper.
- 75) The statue of Ramses II is a very important Ancient Egyptian magnet.
- 76) People can waste lots of money by using the underground.
- 77) The accident wouldn't happen if he hadn't been using his mobile phone.

Model answers

- 1) are – is    2) a school – school    3) is - are    4) are – is    5) were – was    6) win – wins  
 7) I'm doing - I'm going to do    8) b enjoy - will enjoy/ 'll enjoy    9) are – is    10)d produce - are produced  
 11) take – have    12) energy – power    13) Much – Many    14) save – saved    15) is – are    16) are – is  
 17) many – much    18) saw - have seen    19) use – used    20) revised - were revising    21) I'd – I've  
 22) was opening - was opened/opened    23) played - has played    24) being – not being    25) present – past  
 26) hurting - killing    27) taste - kill    28) writing - talking    29) feeding - catching    30) you catch - You'll catch  
 31) will freeze – freezes    32) you break -you'll break    33) spent – spend    34) she wins -she'll win  
 35) you'll mix - you mix    36) worked - has worked    37) use to - used to    38) break - will break    39) written - was  
 written    40) makes - gives    41) width - wide    42) moon - sun    43) rock - gasses    44) thousand - million  
 45) surface – centre    46) releases – absorbs    47) can – cannot    48) disappear - happen    49) usual - unusual  
 50) north – south    51) noise – light    52) make – happen    53) rain - no rain/ of – without  
 54) pass – might pass/might have passed    55) can't – must    56) had he - he had    57) go - have gone  
 58) go - going    59) in - on    60) meet - to meet    61) lake - leak    62) many - much/time - times    63) find – found  
 64) solid - liquid    65) team - couple    66) I do - I'm going to do/I'll do    67) wrote - written    68) lived - have lived  
 69) credit – identity    70) water – ice/melts-boils    71) kings – spies    72) went- gone    73) confession – profession  
 74) if saw - if I saw/I had seen    75) magnet – monument    76) waste – save    77) happen – have happened

## Second term situations

### Unit 10

- a) A friend is looking worried. You want to know why. What do you ask?  
What's the matter? / You look worried. What's wrong?
- b) Someone asks if you had a good holiday. You enjoyed your holiday, but the weather was not very good.  
This was a disappointment.  
I had a good time, but I wish the weather had been better/had not been so bad.
- c) A friend asks what subject you would like to be better at.  
I wish I was/were better at history. / I'd like to be better at history.
- d) Someone asks you about a school trip you went on. You learnt a lot, but you did not take as many photos as you had planned to.  
I learnt a lot but I wish I had taken more photos.

### Unit 12

- a) You would like to find out what music your friend likes. What do you ask?  
What kind of music do you like?
- b) A friend asks you what sort of music you enjoy.  
I'm a big fan of folk music.
- c) You want to find out if your friend plays a musical instrument.  
Do/Can you play a musical instrument?
- d) A friend asks you whether there is any sort of music you don't like.  
I can't stand/really dislike modern music.

### Review D

- a) A friend asks how you feel about an important English test you have next week.  
I wish I knew more English words.
- b) A friend asks you if you had a good weekend. You enjoyed the weekend, but you think you wasted a lot of time.  
I enjoyed the weekend but I wish I hadn't wasted so much time.
- c) One of your friends is very busy. You would like to help him or her.  
Is there anything I can do to help?/Would you like me to help?
- d) A friend asks you what kind of books you enjoy reading.  
I'm very keen on historical novels./I'm a big fan of historical novels.

### Unit 15

- a) A friend asks you if you think people will read books in a hundred years' time.  
Yes, I'm sure they will.
- b) In a conversation, a friend uses the word gadgets. You do not understand the word.  
What are gadgets? / Can you explain the word gadgets? / What does gadgets mean?
- c) A friend asks if you think people will have their own spaceships in 50 years.  
No, I shouldn't think so./No, I don't think they will.
- d) A friend uses the words travel and journey in the same sentence. You do not understand the different meanings of these two words.  
What is the difference between travel and journey?

### Review E

- a) A friend asks you why you enjoy sport. Name two reasons.  
For two reasons: firstly, it keeps me fit and secondly, I like being with my friends.
- b) Warn your friend who is about to cross the road, because there is a car coming very fast.  
Look/Watch out! (There's a car coming.)
- c) Your brother is not working hard enough at school. You think he will get very low marks. Warn him.  
If you don't work harder, you'll get low marks./ Unless you work harder, you'll get low marks.
- d) A friend asks you whether you think people will continue to explore space in the future.  
Yes, I'm sure they'll continue./Yes, they'll definitely continue.

### Unit 16

- a) An interviewer asks if you would work some evenings during the week. You would be happy to do this.  
Yes, that would be no problem.
- b) You want to be able to contact a person you have just met, but you do not have their details.  
Could you tell/give me your phone number and e-mail address, please?
- c) Your friend is applying for a new job. This is a surprise and you ask him the reason.  
(Really) Why are you applying for a new job?
- d) You want to know whether someone you are interviewing can drive.  
Do you have a driving licence? / Have you passed your driving test?

### Unit 18

- a) An educational adviser asks you what skills you would like to improve. You have never been very good at maths.  
I need to improve my maths skills.
- b) Someone has asked you for educational advice. Find out what qualifications this person has.  
What qualifications do you have already?
- c) A friend wants to go back to education, but cannot leave home to go to university. Suggest a distance learning course.  
Have you thought/What about doing a distance-learning course?
- d) A friend suggests that you do an evening course to improve your English.  
Thanks/Thank you. That's a good/great idea.

### Practice test four

- a) Your brother looks worried. You want to know whether he has a problem.  
What's the matter?/Is something wrong?
- b) Your mother was very busy yesterday. You regret not helping her.  
I wish I had helped my mother yesterday./I regret that I didn't help/not helping my mother yesterday.
- c) An English friend asks you how you celebrate Sham El-Nessim.  
I/We celebrate by eating salted fish./I/We eat salted fish.
- d) You forgot to thank a friend for a present he/she gave you.

I'm (very) sorry I forgot to thank you for the present.

Practice test five

a) Your friend starts to cross a road when you see a car coming. Warn your friend.

Watch out! A car's coming!/Look out! There's a car coming!

b) Someone asks if you think people will still have cars in 50 years.

I'm sure/certain they will.

c) You hear the word magnet on the radio. Ask a friend what it means.

Can you tell me what (the word) magnet mean?/What does (the word) magnet mean?/What is the meaning of (the word) magnet?

d) A friend asks you why you have such an expensive mobile phone. You have two reasons.

For two reasons. Firstly, because I can use it for e-mail and secondly, because the camera is better.

Practice test six

a) You are interviewing someone for a job. Find out about their qualifications and experience.

Could you tell me what qualifications and experience you have?/What qualifications and experience do you have?

b) Your friend looks like he/she hasn't been sleeping for days. Advise him/her.

You look exhausted. You should go home and sleep.

c) An interviewer has asked you why you have applied for a job in a particular company. Give a reason.

The reason is that a friend (has) recommended this company to me.

d) You do not understand what distance learning is. Ask a friend.

Can you explain what distance learning is?/I don't understand what distance learning is. Can you explain it to me, please?

Second term speakers

7) A: Is there anything I can do to help, Miss Salma?

B: Could you give these books back to the class after break?

A: Yes, of course. Is that the homework we did last week?

B: Yes, that's right. Your homework was very good.

Place: classroom speaker A: student speaker B: teacher function: offer help/ask and answer questions

8) A: Excuse me. I need to find out about modern farming in Egypt for a university project.

B: All the information on agriculture is on the second floor.

A: Thank you. Can I take any of the books out?

B: Yes. Just bring them to the desk near the entrance.

Place: library speaker A: university student speaker B: librarian/library worker

function: ask for information/give instructions

9) A: Do you remember what happened?

B: No, I just remember waking up in the road.

A: How do you feel now?

B: Not too bad. Will I have to stay here tonight?

A: We're not sure yet. We'll have to check you have no broken bones.

Place: hospital speaker A: doctor/nurse speaker B: patient/someone who has been hurt in a road accident

function: ask for and give reasons

10) A: Could you tell us why you would like to study here?

B: Your Biology Department has a very good reputation.

A: And if we accept you, what do you hope to do when you graduate?

B: Well, I'd like to work for a food company.

Place: university speaker A: interviewer speaker B: future student/someone applying to study at university

function: ask and answer interview questions

11) A: Are you in your first year?

B: Yes, I'm studying English, but it's only my third week.

A: My parents would like me to apply here. Would you recommend it?

B: Yes, definitely.

Place: university/college speaker A: future student speaker B: first year student

function: ask for and give advice

12) A: Well, your application has been successful.

B: That's great! When do I start?

A: At the beginning of next month. You'll be working at our Cairo branch.

B I'm looking forward to starting.

Place: company/office speaker A: interviewer/boss speaker B: successful job applicant

function: express happiness

previous years speakers

SEC 2

1- A: How would you like to pay for it, sir?

B: By credit card.

A: Well. Shall I put it in a bag for you, sir?

B: Yes, please.

Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....

2- A: Where to?

B: The airport, please. Terminal 2. Could you hurry up, please? My plane leaves in half an hour.

A: I'll do my best, but as you see, the traffic is very heavy today.

Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....

3- A: How was your flight, sir?

B: Excellent.

A: Welcome back to Egypt.

Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....

4- A: May I get in, sir?

B: You are late.

A: Sorry, sir I won't be late again.

Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....

5- A: Why are you throwing this rubbish here?

- B: Well, what would you like me to do with it?  
A: You should put it in the garbage bin.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 6- A: Excuse me, do you have these trousers in a larger size?  
B: Just one moment, madam, I'll check.  
A: Thank you.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 7- A: It's very kind of you to bring me such lovely flowers.  
B: Not at all. I hope you get better soon.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 8- A: How would you like to pay for this suit?  
B: By MasterCard.  
A: That's fine.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 9- A: Is there anything to declare?  
B: I don't think so.  
A: Will you open your bags, please?  
B: Sure.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 10- A: Next time, I'll send you off.  
B: Why?  
A: For your deliberate fouls.  
B: I'm sorry.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 11) A: Look there, that is an African elephant.  
B: It's the largest land animal today.  
A: I see, and what does it feed on?  
B: Leaves, branches and other vegetation.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 12) A: What's wrong with your dog?  
B: It doesn't eat well and it rarely moves.  
A: Well. Let me examine it.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
13. A: Can you suggest a cream for sunburn?  
B: This cream should help a lot.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
14. A: Now the dangerous scene. Ready?  
B: Yes, sir.  
A: Stand by. Camera 4. Action.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 15- A: Passports and tickets, please.  
B: Here you are.  
A: Have a safe trip.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 16- A: The service is slow and the soup is cold.  
B: Sorry sir. I'll change the soup at once.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 17- A: Can I have a ticket, please?  
B: Where do you want to go?  
A: To Alexandria.  
B: It's for 50 pounds, sir.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 18- A: Can I help you, sir?  
B: I want a T-shirt, size 36.  
A: What colour do you prefer?  
B: Blue  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 19- A: It's nice to see you. I wish you a speedy recovery.  
B: Thank you. It's so kind of you to visit me.  
A: When will you leave?  
B: In two days.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 20- A: What would you like to order, sir?  
B: Fish, rice and salad.  
A: Do you like something to drink?  
B: Orange juice, please.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 21- A: Ten minutes to land! Fasten your seat belts, please.  
B: Great, we are back home.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 22- A: Which tooth seems to have a problem?  
B: The one at the front left. It always hurts when I chew on it.  
A: Right. Would you open your mouth, please?  
Yes, it seems you have a slight problem, but I can fix it.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 23) A: Can I help you, sir?  
B: Ok! I'd like to have some tea.  
A: How would you like your tea?  
B: With little sugar.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 24) A: what's the matter with you?

- B: I have a severe toothache.  
A: Let me see, this tooth should be pulled out.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 25- A: I'd like to extend my stay for another month.  
B: OK. Can I see your passport?  
A: Of course. Here you are.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 26- A: Just drop me off here. How much do you want?  
B: Ten pounds on the meter.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 27- A: Have you got sugar?  
B: Yes, sir. How much do you want?  
A: Two kilos, please.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 28- A: Can I book a room for next Friday night?  
B: Single or double, sir?  
A: Single, please.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 29- A: Could you tell me what our homework is please?  
B: You have to finish the exercise we started in class today.  
A: Thank you. When do you want to see it?  
B: On Thursday, please!  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 30-A: That shirt is 50 pounds, sir.  
B: Can I pay by debit card?  
A: Yes, certainly.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- SEC 3 EXAMS
- 1- A: When did you graduate?  
B: in 1995.  
A: Do you speak English fluently?  
B: Yes, sir. I have worked as a translator in a big company for two years.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 2- A: How can I help you?  
B: Well, my car has been stolen!  
A: How?  
B: I had parked it last night in front of my house in Ramses Street. In the morning it wasn't there!  
A: What make is it?  
B: BMW.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 3-A: What's wrong with you?  
B: I have a nasty headache.  
A: How long have you been suffering from it?  
B: Two days.  
A: Let me examine you.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 4-A: Why are you late?  
B: The metro has broken down.  
A: But you are always late for the first lesson.  
B: I'm sorry, sir. I'll not be late again.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 5-A: What do you think of university life, so far?  
B: To tell you the truth, everything here is so big in comparison with school.  
A: You are good at rowing. Why don't you join our rowing team?  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 6-A: Many of the robot toys we have can respond to your voice.  
B: What age area are they?  
A: From 5 to 14 years.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 7-A: Today we're going to play the film "The Mask of Gold". If you have questions, keep them till the end.  
B: Are you going to discuss our questions later?  
A: Yes, but you have to follow up the incidents carefully.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 8-A: The train which goes to Aswan will leave from platform 7 in about 5 minutes.  
B: Thank you, I'll have to hurry to catch it.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 9-A: I'd like to know what is on today.  
B: It's an action film.  
A: When does the last performance start?  
B: At 12 p.m.  
A: Ok. Book me a seat, please.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 10-A: Please, fasten your seat belt, sir.  
B: Ok. Can I have a drink, please?  
A: Sorry sir, you'll have to wait until we take off.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 11) A: Can you tell me how long I can keep these books?  
B: You can borrow them for a couple of weeks.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 12) A: What's wrong with my teeth?  
B: One tooth needs to be filled.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....

- 13) A: I want you to look at these pictures, ma' am, and point at the man who took your bag.  
B: Yes, sir. He is this man in the green jacket.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 14) A: Which type of holiday do you like to book, sir?  
B: I prefer a package holiday.  
A: That one is fine for you, sir.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 15) A: How old is this mummy?  
B: It's about 4000 years old.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 16) A: So, you want to borrow L.E. 200,000. What do you want the money for?  
B: I want to buy some more land. Thus, I can expand my business.  
A: Well, we can certainly lend you the money, but we'll need to see a business plan.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 17) A: Hello! Can I help you, sir?  
B: Yes, I'd like to have a single room, please.  
A: With or without a bathroom.  
B: With a bathroom.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 18) A: Can I see your driving licence, please?  
B: What for?  
A: You have parked in a no parking area.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....
- 19) A: Please, fasten your seat belt.  
B: Are we about to land?  
A: Yes, in a few minutes.  
Place: ..... Speaker A: ..... Speaker B: ..... Function: .....

### Unit 10: science and scientists

#### Idiomatic Expressions:

keep up with	يساير / يجاري / يواكب	let's make sure	يزداد وزنا
do well in the test	يؤدي اد	gain weight	يخس وزنا
do experiments	يجري تجارب معملية	lose weight	في نهاية العملية
do more revision	يراجع كثيرا	at the end of the process	يتثبت نظريه
do research on (into) diseases	يجري بحث على الامراض	prove a theory	يجد علاج للامراض
do better	يقوم بعمل شيء مفيد	find a cure for illness	يبحث على الانترنت
do something useful	يراجع (يفحص) الافكار	look on the internet	I hope so
check ideas		make a discovery	يقوم باكتشاف
pass down through			

#### Prepositions

important for	هام لـ	test....with	يختبر....بـ
find out about	يكتشف عن	compare....with/to	يقارن.....بـ
worried about		interested in	مهتم بـ
better at	جيد في	refer to	يسير إلى
benefit from	يستفيد من	get together	
water..... with	يروى....بـ	release....into	يطلق....إلى
wrong with	/	cause off	يسبب
get.....from	يحصل.....من	specialise in	يتخصص في
careful about	حريص على	fall from	يسقط من
turn off	يغلق	use for	يستخدم لـ
cure off		talk about	يتكلم عن
sorry about	ياسف بشأن	way of	طريقه لـ
experiment on	يجرب على	run out	ينفذ / ينضب
research into		get over	يتغلب على

#### Language Notes

- 1) lose: يفقد  
Ex: I've lost my driving licence.
- 2) waste: يضيع / يهدر  
They waste their time watching TV.
- 3) result: نتيجة  
Ex: What was the exam's result?
- 4) conclusion:   
Ex: We've come to a conclusion that it was a wonderful match.
- 5) visible:   
Ex: These tiny creatures are hardly visible to the naked eyes.  
ex: The movie has a strong visual impact.
- 6) Visual:   
Ex: The movie has a strong visual impact.
- 7) national:   
Ex: Ahmed Oraby is a national hero.  
Ex: Nelson Mandella was a great African nationalist.
- 8) nationalist:   
Ex: Ahmed Oraby is a national hero.  
Ex: Nelson Mandella was a great African nationalist.
- 9) illness: مرض /   
EX: I think your illness is due to overwork.
- 10) disease: مرض محدد و يمكن أن يكون معدي   
Salwa has a rare eye disease.

#### Wish / If only

- 1) I wish + was/ were ( present) EX: I wish I were you.
- 2) I wish + could/would ( future) EX: I wish I could come.
- 3) I wish + had+ pp ( past) EX: I wish I had been rich.

#### Note:

- 1) I'd like, but I can't  
I'm sorry I can't  
I expect / look forward to  
My hope / goal is to  
I dream of +ing
- I wish I / we could / would + inf.

2) I'm sorry I didn't → I wish I had +P.P  
 I regret +ing → I wish I hadn't +P.P  
 I regret not+ing → I wish I had +P.P

( hope + will) يمكن التعبير عن التمني باستخدام

Ex: I hope I will pass my English test.

### Unit 11: The count of Monte Cristo

#### Idiomatic Expressions:

take revenge	ينتقم من شخص	on his wedding day	في يوم زفافه
in revenge for		be sent to prison for his life	يرسل إلى السجن مدى الحياة
desire for revenge		make money	يكون نفودا
fall asleep	يغلبه النعاس	take care of	يعتني بـ
reach an agreement	يصل لاتفاق	write in his style	يكتب بأسلوبه
be / get married to	يتزوج من	keep at home	يبقى بالمنزل
write under different names	يكتب تحت اسماء مختلفة	show no sign of recognition	تجاهلني وكأنه لم يراني
catch up with	يلحق بـ / يساير / يواكب	miss the school work	يفوته العمل المدرسي
get the credit	ينال التقه	look with envy	ينظر نظرة حسد

#### Prepositions

welcome to		tell about	يخبر عن
innocent of		envious of	حفود / عيور من
escape from	يهرب من	rescue from	ينقذ من
accuse of	يتهم بـ	victim of	ضحية لـ
depend on	يعتمد على	friendly with	
lead to	يقود / يؤدي إلى	share with	يشارك مع
bring up	يربي	find out	يكتشف
object to	يعترض على	interested in	مهتم بـ
thank.....for	يشكر على	write for	يكتب لـ
approve of	يوافق على	based on	
move into	ينتقل إلى	dream of	يحلم بـ
leave for	يغادر إلى	take care of	يعتني بـ
go into	يدخل	borrow from	يستعير من

#### Language Notes

- 1) envious: / الشيء المحسود عليه (المرعوب فيه)  
 Ex: She was envious of her sister's success. His position of work is enviable.  
 3) Assistant: / 4) aide: مساعد (لشخصية عامة)  
 Ex: I'd like to speak to the assistant manager.  
 Ex: A wise man works as a president aide in important affairs.  
 5) adventure: مغامرة (أحداث مثيرة) 6) experience: خبرة  
 Ex: Mustafa had so many adventures. I had a terrible experience yesterday.  
 7) avenge: يثار / ينتقم من (لحدث ما) 8) revenge: ينتقم من شخص ما على حدث ما  
 Ex: Mustafa had to avenge his father's murder.  
 Ex: He wants to revenge on the judge for sending him to prison.  
 9) envy: / 10) jealousy: غيرة  
 Ex: Bad People have a lot of envy. Aza never likes Nahla out of jealousy.

#### The past perfect

FORMATION: Had+ p.p  
 EX: After I had eaten, I washed my hands.

#### GUIDED WORDS:

- 1) After → past perfect/past simple → past simple  
 2) As soon as → past perfect/past simple → past simple  
 3) negative past simple → until → past perfect positive  
 4) Before → past simple → past perfect  
 5) By the time → past simple → past perfect  
 6) when → past simple → past perfect

Note the following:

- \* After + (verb + ing)  
 \* Before + (verb + ing)

3) [after / before / when] + present simple → future / imperative

#### USAGE:

Two actions happened in the past, one before the other. The first is past perfect and the second is past simple. حدثين وقعا في الماضي الحدث الاول ماضي تام او ماضي بسيط و الثاني ماضي بسيط

#### The past perfect continuous

#### Formation:

Had + been + ing  
 (كم طول الفترة الزمنية / How long / since / all / for)

Usage: يؤكد أن حدث ما كان مستمراً في الماضي قبل وقوع حدث أو للتأكيد على أن حدث استغرق فترة في الماضي.  
 Ex: We had been waiting for three hours before our plane took off.

Ex: There were floods because it had been raining for 3 days.

Ex: We had been trying to reach you on the phone yesterday.

Ex: When I phoned Salma, she was having a piano lesson. ( اتصلت بها في منتصف الدرس). الفرق بين الماضي المستمر و الماضي التام المستمر:  
 ( اتصلت بها وكان الدرس على وشك الانتهاء)

When I phoned Salma, she had been having a piano lesson.

## Unit 12: Festivals and folk music

### Idiomatic Expressions:

have your own style	لديك اسلوبك	in the same way	بنفس الطريقة
have a special purpose	لديه عرض خاص	in the open air	في الهواء الطلق
with this in mind	مع أخذ هذا في الاعتبار	in relation to	
It's our responsibility to	إنها مسئوليتنا / واجبنا أن	keep the music alive	يبقى الموسيقى حيه
play on an instrument	يعزف على آلة موسيقي	be increasingly used	تستخدم بشكل متزايد
make sculptures	يقوم بأعمال النحت	sing babies to sleep	تغنى للأطفال ليناموا
make a model of	يصمم نموذج لـ		

### Prepositions

different from		purpose of	
write down	يدون / يسجل	responsible for	
refer to	يشير إلى	access to	مدخل / سبيل لـ
listen to	ينصت إلى	kind of	
make up	يؤلف - يخترع	vary from.....to	يختلف من....إلى
evolve into		help (sb) with	يساعد....دو
compare....to	يقارن....	part of	
learn....from	يتعلم من	worried about	
give out	يوزع	protect from / against	يحمي من / ضد
depend on	يعتمد على	cheer ....up	يبهج / يبتهج
pick (sb) up	يصطحب	get through	ينهي

### Language Notes

- 1) festival: مهرجان غالبا للمناسبات الدينية  
Ex: Eid El-Fitr is an important festival for Muslims.  
Ex: We had a lot of carnivals on the new year.
- 2) carnival: /  
Ex: I like sports programme on TV. I like el Mehwer channel.
- 3) programme: / / / 4) channel  
Ex: I like sports programme on TV. I like el Mehwer channel.
- 5) people: / / / 6) folk: نوع معين من الناس و هنا نستخدم كجمع / تقليدي  
Ex: The Egyptian people are very kind. Some composers made use of folk songs.
- 7) sculpture: / 8) statue: تمثال مجسم لإنسان أو لحيوان  
Ex: A well-known artist made a sculpture.  
Ex: I like the statue of Liberty in New York.
- 9) landmark: / 10) landscape: منظر طبيعي  
ex: the Sphinx is one of Giza's landmark. What a wonderful landscape?

### Language focus

#### 1) Verbs followed immediately by full infinitive:

agree	يوافق	demand	يطلب	arrange	يرتب	intend	ينوي
hope	يأمل	deserve	يستحق	learn	يتعلم	expect	يتوقع
refuse	يرفض	promise	يوعد	attempt	يحاول	mean	يعني
wish	يتمنى	tend	يميل	threaten	يهدد	pretend	يتظاهر
want	يريد	dare	يجرؤ	cause	يسبب	seek	يسعى
manage	يفتح في	afford	يقدر على	decide	يقرر	resolve	يصمم
long	يشنق	hesitate	يتردد	force	يجبر	seem	يبدو
help	يساعد	swear	يقسم	offer	يعرض / يقدم	intend	ينوي

#### 2) Verbs followed by object + to + inf.

allow	يسمح	invite	يدعو	warn	يحذر	tell	يخبر
forbid	يحرم	encourage	يشجع	teach	يدرّس / يعلم	oblige / compel	يلزم
ask	يسأل	advise	ينصح	urge	يحث	permit	يأذن / يسمح
instruct	يرشد / يعلم	remind	يذكر	request	يطلب	tempt	يعوي / يعري

#### 3) Verbs followed by ing- form

avoid	يتجنب	mention	يذكر	consider	يفكر / يعتبر	mind	يماح
prevent	يمنع	detest	يكره	miss	يفتقد	entail	يستلزم / يتضمن
resent	يشتمز	appreciate	يقدر	carry on	يستمر / يواصل	adore	يعشق
enjoy	يستمتع	cease	ينوقف / يوقف	give up	يقطع عن	quit	ينوقف عن / يكف
suggest	يقترح	involve	يتورط في	propose	يعترّم / ينوي	confess	يعترف
recommend	يوصي بـ	anticipate	يتوقع	spend	يقضي	deny	ينكر
admit	يعترف	postpone	يرجئ / يؤجل	dislike	يكره	keep on	يواصل
delay	يؤجل	tolerate	يتسامح	practise	يمارس	resist	يقاوم
risk	يخاطر	finish	ينهي				

#### 4) Verbs followed by (to + inf) or (verb + ing)

start / begin	يبدأ	continue	يستمر	like	يحب
hate	يكره	prefer	يفضل	love	يحب

Ex: I prefer to drink coffee. (now) I prefer drinking coffee. (general)

#### 5) Verbs followed by (to + inf) or (v.+ing)

see	يري	notice	يلحظ	smell	يشم	observe	يراقب
hear	يسمع	feel	يشعر	watch	يشاهد		

#### 6) Verbs followed by bare infinitive without to

\* let يدع / يسمح - help يساعد - يرغم

#### 7) Verbs take (to + inf) or (v.+ ing)

\* remember / forget / regret / try / stop + to + inf. (for necessary actions)

مع وجود فرق كبير في المعنى  
للأحداث الضرورية التي يجب أن تتم (الحدث لم يتم)

\* remember / forget + verb + ing (for past memories)

لذكريات الماضي التي قد تمت وتذكرها الآن. (الحدث قد تم)

- \* regret + to + inf.
- \* regret + ing
- \* try + to + inf
- \* try + ing
- \* stop + to + inf
- \* stop + ing

يوسفني ان ابلغ شخص بخبر سيء

يحاول ويفشل / يبذل قصارى جهده  
يجرب شيء ما ربما قد يحل المشكلة  
يتوقف لغرض ما  
يتوقف عن فعل شيء ما

( v. + ing) (to) أفعال و تعبيرات تنتهي بـ

contribute to	يسهم في	object to	يعترض على	oppose to	يعترض على
look forward to	يتطلع لـ	(be) used to		(be) accustomed to	
expose to	يتعرض لـ	admit (to)	يعترف بـ	prefer...to	يفضل..... عن
devote...to	يكرس لـ	thanks to		in addition to	بالإضافة إلى
own up to	يعترف بـ / لـ	take to	يحب بشدة		

Note:

- 1) need / require / want+V+ ing
- 2) need to + be +p.p.

### Unit 13: Women in history

Idiomatic Expressions:

(be) awarded degree	منح درجة علمية	break the record	يحطم الرقم القيد
(be) better known to..(as)	معروفة جيدا لدي	do a job	يقوم بمهمه
(be) born into wealthy family		for the love of flying	من أجل حب الطيران
(be) in charge of		get a good education	يحصل على تعليم جيد
(make) solo flight	يقوم برحلة جوية فرديه	give an example of	يعطي مثالاً لـ
at a time		have access to	يكون على اتصال
at the age of		miss the record	يفقد الرقم القياسي
the person in charge	/	well-trained nursing staff	هيئه تريض مدربه جيدا

### Prepositions

argue for	يجد	care for	يعتني بـ
argue against	يجادل ضد	late for	
interested in	مهتم بـ	suitable for	
specialized in	يتخصص في	good for	مفيد لـ
associated with		responsible for	
popular with		write for	يكتب لـ
overcrowded with		care about	يهتم بـ
start with	يبدأ بـ	grow up	يكبر / ينمو في
successful at		fly from...to	يطير من...إلى
take up	يشغل حيز من	translate into	يترجم إلى
proud of		effect on	تأثير على

### Language Notes

1) in charge of

Ex: Maher is in charge of the store.

3) wear: يرتدي ( أتم لبس الشيء )

Ex: Mum was wearing her new dress.

ex: Put on your coat, it's too cold today.

5) solo: /

Ex: He likes to fly solo.

7) on time:

Ex: The train arrived on time.

9) at a time: ذلك الوقت (تشير إلى الماضي)

ex: Our houses didn't have electricity at a time of occupation.

Ex: Monday morning suits me.

11) suite:

1) WHO:

EX: Ali is my friend. He is kind.>>>>Ali is my friend who is kind.

This is Marwan. I met him a month ago.>>>>This is Marwan who I met a month ago.

2) WHICH:

EX: This is the cat. The cat ate the fish.>>>>This is the cat which ate the fish.

We bought a new house. It is very comfortable.>>>>We bought a new house which is very comfortable.

3) WHEN:

EX: Ramadan is a month. We fast in Ramadan.>>>>Ramadan is a month when we fast.

Winter is a season. It rains in Winter.>>>>Winter is a season when it rains.

4) WHERE:

EX: This is the room. I sleep in it.>>>>This is the room where I sleep in.

This is the mosque. I pray in it.>>>> This is the mosque where I pray in.

5) WHOSE:

NOTE: It comes instead of( my/his/her/its/our/your/their) صفات الملكية

EX: Marwan is my son. His father is a teacher.>>>>Marwan is my son whose father is a teacher.

Heba is my teacher. Her car is red.>>>>Heba is my teacher whose car is red.

### Omission of Relative pronouns

Ex: This is the man (who/ whom) you met yesterday.

( يحذف ضمير الوصل إذا حل محل مفعول به مباشر. يمكن حذفهما )

Ex: A barometer is an instrument (which is) used to measure atmospheric pressure.

( يحذف ضمير الوصل إذا أتبع بصيغة المبني للمجهول في جمل المبني للمعلوم. الربط هنا بالتصريف الثالث بعد حذف ضمير الوصل. )

يُحذف ضمير الوصل و يحل محله (ing)

Ex: vegetables which contain (containing) a lot of water, don't freeze well.

يُحذف ضمير

Ex: students who are brilliant must be rewarded. (Brilliant students must be rewarded)

### Unit 14: Travels with my aunt

#### Idiomatic Expressions:

be careful = watch out	give up his job	يقطع عن وظيفته
change people for the better	have an effect on	له تأثير على
earn/ make money	make decisions	يتخذ قرارات
enjoy company	miss(sb) very much	يشنق...إلى
get on well with	behave in a different way	يتصرف بطريقة مختلفة
give advice to	for this reason	لهذا السبب

#### Prepositions

benefit from	يستفيد من	hear about	يسمع عن
find out	يكشف	different from	
lead to	يؤدي إلى	interested in	مهتم بـ
live on	يعيش على	look at	ينظر إلى
look after	يعنى بـ	based on	
popular with		tolerant of	
share with	يشارك مع	effect on	تأثير على
ready for	جاهز لـ	cruel to	
experience of		work for	يعمل لدى
write for	يكتب لـ	work on	يحسن من شيء
welcome to			

#### Language Notes

1) **publish:** ينشر كتابا أو جريدة

Ex: When was the newspaper first published? **2) issue:** يصدر رسميا

3) **colleague:** زميل عمل

4) **college:** كلية

Ex: I know Mr. Mohammed very well, he is my colleague.

Ex: My son goes to the college every day.

5) **miss:** يفتقد / لا يلحق بـ

6) **lose:** يضيع

Ex: I miss my uncle very much. I have lost my way.

8) **find out:** يكتشف معلومات

7) **find:** يجد

Ex: I had found out why the accident happened.

Ex: I can't find the receipt to take my bags.

9) **banking:**

10) **bankrupt:**

Ex: Salma decided on a career in banking.

Ex: The sudden fall in the world trade made us bankrupt.

11) **literature:** (...)

12) **literati:** المهتمين بالأدب

ex: I'd like to study the British literature.

ex: Annual conferences are well attended by literati.

13) **literate:** يجيد القراءة و الكتابة

14) **delighted:**

Ex: Many soldiers are literate. I was delighted by the success of my son.

15) **impressed:**

16) **delightful:** سارة / مبهجة

Ex: I was impressed with my parents' encouragement.

Ex: The news of today is delightful.

17) **impressive:**

مثير للإعجاب

Ex: The way he handled the problem was impressive.

#### CONJUNCTION

1) **and= besides= as well as= not only = in addition to = in addition:**

a) Ali and I are friends.

b) Besides going to the market, we went to the zoo.

c) He spoke English as well as French.

d) She not only succeeded but also got high marks.

مثل (الفعل يكون حسب الفاعل الأول)

ليس فقط...بل أيضا

يلاحظ في حالة البدء بـ "Not only" يكون ما بعدها في صيغة سؤال.

2) **because= since= as= due to= owing to = because of = on account of:**

a) I stayed in bed because I was exhausted.

b) We lost the match since we played badly.

c) As he had no money, he couldn't buy his needs.

d) Owing to his bravery, he defeated his rival.

e) He lost the game due to his bad play.

f) She watched the film through it is interesting.

بسبب (يأتي بعدها اسم)

بسبب (يأتي بعدها اسم)

(بعدها جملة خبرية)

3) **to = in order to = so as to = so that:**

a) We switched on the radio to listen to music.

b) She went to the market so as to/ in order to buy her needs.

c) He travels to Europe so that he may find a job.

d) They went to the stadium so that they could see the match.

(بعدها مصدر)

( )

#### NOTE:

1) Present tense>>>>>so that>>>>>subject+ may/ can+ infinitive

2) Past tense>>>>>so that>>>>>subject+ might/ could + inf.

4) **But= although= even though= however= though = even if= despite = in spite of = regardless of:**

a) Sayed is tall but Hani is short.

b) Although he studied hard, he got low marks.

c) Even though she was wealthy, she felt miserable.

(جملة خبرية)

(جملة خبرية)

( )

d) The dress was expensive; however she bought it. ( )

5) Unless = if not:

a) If you don't work hard, you will get low marks.

>>> Unless you work hard, you will get low marks.

6) So = therefore = consequently = that's why ولهذا / ونتيجة لذلك

Ex: I missed the train so I was late for the interview.

### Unit 15: The future of books

#### Idiomatic Expressions:

(be) on the move يتحرك / ينتقل من مكان إلى مكان	I can't afford
a range of books	on the other hand
at anytime	(PTO) please turn over
give access to يعطى مدخل لـ	reduce (go down) يقلل
hold information	you'd better + inf

#### Prepositions

enthusiastic about / for	مفيد لـ	pay for	يد
good for	يتاجر مع	cut down	يقطع
trade with	يفضل ... عن	made from	يكتشف
prefer...to	يستمر في	find out	
go on	يستخدم لأجل	part of	
put.....on	يخطط لأجل	access to	
use....for	يقلل.... بنسبه	knock down	يهدم
plan for	يزيل من	go on	يستمر
cut...by	يساير	reason for	
remove from		take place	يحدث
keep up with		type of	

#### Language Notes

1) paper:

Ex: Scrap paper

3) the papers:

Ex: I usually read the daily papers.

Ex: 5) soaked:

Ex: You are soaked, take off these wet clothes. This room is rather wet, it is damp.

7) made from:

Ex: The cake is made from flower.

9) stationery:

Ex: We buy pens, pencils and paper at the stationery shop.

Ex: He crashed into the back of a stationary vehicle.

11) electric:

Ex: If you feel cold, switch on the electric fire. My brother is an electrical engineer.

Ex: 5) soaked:

Ex: You are soaked, take off these wet clothes. This room is rather wet, it is damp.

7) made from:

Ex: The cake is made from flower.

9) stationery:

Ex: We buy pens, pencils and paper at the stationery shop.

Ex: He crashed into the back of a stationary vehicle.

11) electric:

Ex: If you feel cold, switch on the electric fire. My brother is an electrical engineer.

#### The future simple passive

formation	التكوين	active	passive
future simple	المستقبل البسيط	will + inf	will + be + P.P
future perfect		will + have + P.P	will + have + been + P.p

(lost / beaten مهزوم / burnt / hurt / يوذى / confused / married / divorced / )

The usage of the future simple:

1) To promise future actions:

Ex: You will be informed of the company's decision.

2) To give details of plans:

Ex: You will be taken to the stadium.

3) Future warning:

Ex: Be careful or you will get hurt.

4) To make logical deductions:

Ex: I'm sure you'll be asked to answer the following questions.

5) Predictions:

Ex: It will rain tomorrow.

6) on-the-spot decisions:

Ex: It's late. I'll take a taxi home.

7) Uncontrollable future actions:

Ex: Winter will set in early this year.

### Unit 16: Finding work

#### Idiomatic Expressions:

awarded an honorary degree يمنح درجة علميه فخريه	a modular science degree يعمل درجة علميه على جزء معين
apply in writing يتقدم بطلب كتابي	do a course in يأخذ دورة في
get a well-salaried job يحصل على وظيفه ذات راتب مجزي	have a contact with
have a degree in يحصل على درجة علميه	have a good command of يجيد / يتقن
hold a driving licence يحمل رخصه قيادة	in honour of تكريما / تشريفا لـ
it doesn't matter لا يهم	the highest grade in

#### Prepositions

work with يعمل مع	succeed in ينجح في
get on with يكون على علاقه طيبه مع	fill in يملأ استماره
swap with يتبادل / يفايض مع	fluent in فصيح في
enquire about يستفسر عن	live with يعيش مع

thank...for	يشكر...على	relevant to	/
account for	يعلل / يفسر	proud of	
look for	يبحث عن	get into	يلتحق بـ / ينضم
compete against	يتنافس ضد	look after	يعتني بـ
work for	يعمل لحساب شخص /	apply for	يتقدم لـ

### Language Notes

1) work: عمل بصفة عامة (اسم لا يعد) 2) job: وظيفة محددة (اسم يعد)

3) work(s): /

\* Working in big cities is very tiring.

\* It's time to change my job.

4) require: يتطلب

5) enquire: يستفسر

6) acquire: يحصل على / يكتسب

Ex: What does the job require?

\* I'd like to enquire about tours available.

\* Salma acquired an American accent while living in New York.

7) degree: شهادة / درجة علمية / درجة لعمل مدرسي

8) grade: /

Ex: My father has got a degree in philosophy.

\* What grade is Mustafa in?

9) licence(u) : يرخص / يعطي ترخيصا رسميا 10) license(v): يرخص / يعطي ترخيصا رسميا

ex: You mustn't drive without a licence.

\* Is that gun licensed?

11) personal: /

12) personnel: هيئة الموظفين في منظمة كبيرة

ex: It's a personnel matter. I don't want to discuss it.

\* Who's the personnel manager in this company?

### The reported speech

look at unit 8 again

### Unit 17: The pearl

#### Idiomatic Expressions:

a relative on my father's side	فريب من ناحيه والدي	seek/avoid publicity	يسعون/ يتجنبوا إلى الشهرة
break out of the prison	يهرب من السجن	well paid jobs	
careful with money	حريص على المال	do business with	يتاجر مع
make(sb) blind to reality	تجعل الإنسان أعمى عن الحقيقة	keep children away from mischief	
intrude into	يتطفل	kill by mistake	يقتل بالخطأ
play tricks on	يخدع	go diving	يذهب للغطس
badly paid jobs	وظائف ذو عائد ضعيف	take pride in	يتباهى بـ

#### Prepositions

escape from	يهرب من	work for	يعمل لدي
get into	يدخل / يلتحق	pay-off	يتم / يسدد دينه كاملا
keep-off	يبعد عن	give up	يستسلم / يتوقف عن
lead to	يؤدي إلى	expert on	خبير في
pay for	يدفع لـ	hear about	يسمع عن
stay with	يمكث مع	frightened of	
throw...into	يلقي / يرمى في	spend on	ينفق...على
vital for		cry out	يصرخ

#### Language Notes

1) publicity: شهرة إعلامية

2) publication: /

Ex: Some people seek publicity, others avoid it.

\* His latest book has just been accepted for publication.

3) valuables: الأشياء النفيسة (القيمة)

4) values: /

Ex: It's advisable to leave your valuables in a safe place.

\* We should keep the traditional values of our society.

#### Grammar

1) verb + object

+ to + inf / ( not to + inf)

tell	يخبر	advise	يذ	encourage	يشجع	remind	يذكر
allow	يسمح	permit	يأذن	require	يتطلب	warn	يحذر
force	يرغم / يجبر	order	يأمر	ask	يسأل	expect	يذ
want	يريد	teach	يعلم	compel	يجبر	temp	يعرّي
instruct	يعلم	urge	يحث	oblige	يجبر	forbid	يحرم / يمنع
request	يطلب	would like	يحب	invite	يدعو		

\* يمكن حذف المفعول في حالة المبني للمجهول:

\* The driver was ordered to stop.

\* I was advised to change my old car.

### Unit 18: Lifelong learning

#### Idiomatic Expressions:

(do) an evening course	يقوم بدورة مسائية	(on) the internet	
at any age		become out of date	تصبح موضه قديمه
do a job	يقوم بمهمه	do most of the work	يقوم بمعظم الاعمال
do the homework	يعمل الواجب	enroll on	يسجل اسمه في
highly qualified staff	هيئة موظفين مؤهلين عاليا	highly skilled jobs	وظائف ذو مهارة عاليا
it's a deal for me	انه حامى الذي ابغيه	all over the world	

#### Prepositions

provide...for	يوفر لاجل	go on	يستمر في
graduate from	يتخرج من	participate in	يشترك في
retire from	يتقاعد من	go back to	
take up	يشغل / يملا	bring up	يربي
graduate with	يتخرج و معه شهادة	grow up	ينضج عقليا
look round	يتجول / يتمشى	object to	يعترض على
communicate with	يتصل بـ	provide with	يزود بـ

instead of move to	ينتقل إلى	benefit from share with	يستفيد من يشارك مع
-----------------------	-----------	----------------------------	-----------------------

- Language Notes**
- 1) **unqualified:** (غير مؤهل خاصة دراسيا) 2) **disqualified:** تجرد من أهليته لمخالفته القانون  
 \* Being unqualified, her job opportunities were limited.  
 \* He has disqualified from driving for three years.
- 3) **employer:** صاحب للخدمة أو الوظيفة 4) **employee:** مهنة تتطلب تدريب  
 \* The car factory is a large employer in this town.  
 \* The school has 100 employees. \* You should work hard to be employable.
- 6) **job:** وظيفة 7) **profession:** مهنة / شغل / هواية / حرفة  
 \* I'm applying for a job in Kuwait. \* After studying education, I entered the legal profession.
- 8) **occupation:** مهنة / شغل / هواية / حرفة  
 \* Fishing is his favourite occupation.
- 9) **high school:** مدرسة ثانوية 10) **college:** كلية  
 \* After high school, students go to the college.  
 \* What is your favourite college?

### Language focus /

- 1) **present necessity:**  
 \* **must (It is necessary for (sb) to + inf)**  
**Usage of "must":**  
 1) A warm invitation:  
 2) Strong advice: نصيحة قوية (الزام)  
 3) A strong reminder to ourselves: تذكرة قوية لأنفسنا  
 4) strong internal feelings of obligation: ضرورة قوية داخلية  
 5) must have+ PP  
 6) have to +inf ليس لديك اختيار بناء على التعليمات الخارجية / لإعطاء نصيحة و الأوامر  
 2) **Lack of present necessity:**  
 Don't / doesn't have to  
 Don't / doesn't need to = It is unnecessary ليس من الضروري  
 Needn't + inf.  
 3) **past necessity**  
 Had to + inf. = It was necessary for (sb) to + inf.  
 4) **Lack of past necessity:**  
 Didn't have to / didn't need to = It was not necessary for (sb) to + inf.  
 5) **Future necessity:**  
 Will have to +inf = it will be necessary  
 6) **Warning (prohibition):** التحذير و التحريم  
 Mustn't + inf  
 It's a rule  
 It's against the law  
 It's forbidden / prohibited / banned  
**Can / could for ability / possibility / and permission**

- 1) **can/can't**  
 a) **Present ability:**  
 b) **Possibility:**  
 c) **Informal permission:** إذن / تصريح غير رسمي  
 d) **Informal polite request:** ب بأدب غير رسمي  
 e) **Offers:**  
 f) **Impossibility: (can't)** ( )

### Important Remarks

- ( مع أفعال تدل على الشعور و التفكير مثل: can )  
 (feel / smell / remember / taste / believe)  
 ( I can't afford to + inf ) ( تستخدم مع التعبير الآتي (ليس بوسعي ماليا أن  
 ) ( possibility ) ( يفضل استخدامها في )  
 \* Many plants can be grown easily indoors.  
 ) ( be able to ) (أكثر شيوعا من can ) يعد استخدام  
 ) ( can ) ( أكثر ادبا وبصفة رسمية من may ) يعد استخدام

- 2) **could/couldn't**  
 a) **General past ability:**  
 b) **future possibility:**  
 c) **Past permission:**  
 d) **Future permission:** إذن / تصريح ماضي  
 e) **Polite request:** تصريح مستقبلي  
 f) **Suggestion:**  
 g) **could have +P.P.**  
 \* Mustafa went to school on foot, he could have gone by car.  
 Could have + p.p. = might have + p.p.

### will have to

- \* If I fail my driving test, I'll have to take it again.  
 \* should (n't)/ ought(n't) to/ 'd better (not) + inf → advice للنصيحة  
 \* should have + PP / ought to have +PP → كان ينبغي عليك أن تفعل كذا و لكنك لم تفعل  
 \* may / might have + PP →



- a) history                      b) historic                      c) historian                      d) historical
- 328) Accountants help people with their .....  
a) wealth                      b) financial                      c) fiancée                      d) finances
- 329) The scientist said she needed .....to help her with her experiment.  
a) an assistant                      b) an assist                      c) apprentice                      d) a catalyst
- 330) His .....was on an island in the middle of a river.  
a) imprison                      b) impression                      c) imprisonment                      d) prison
- 331) The children had an .....about who had won the race.  
a) argue                      b) argument                      c) agreement                      d) argued
- 332) When his grandfather was a boy, he worked as a .....for a rich man.  
a) servant                      b) serve                      c) service                      d) served
- 333) Staying late at school was his .....for talking in class.  
a) punish                      b) punished                      c) punishable                      d) punishment
- 334) The politicians could not reach an .....on what to do next.  
a) agree                      b) agreement                      c) agreeable                      d) agreed
- 335) After his father ....., she didn't send Alexander to school.  
a) died                      b) had died                      c) was dying                      d) has died
- 336) By the time Alexandre was 20, his mother .....all her money.  
a) had spent                      b) had been spending                      c) has spent                      d) spending
- 337) He found work as a secretary to someone who .....a friend of his father's in the army.  
a) has been                      b) was being                      c) had been                      d) is
- 338) Before he wrote The Count of Monte Cristo, he .....famous as a playwright.  
a) became                      b) had been becoming                      c) had become                      d) become
- 339) They discovered that Dumas .....other people to write for him. He was examining their writings.  
a) had been employing                      b) employed                      c) had employed                      d) employs
- 340) By the time he was 12, my brother ....., three languages. He spoke, Arabic, English and French.  
a) learnt                      b) has learnt                      c) was learning                      d) had learnt
- 341) When I went to my friend's flat, she .....for school.  
a) already left                      b) has already left                      c) had already left                      d) was leaving
- 342) Last year, I spent a month in France. I .....of going there since I was a child.  
a) have dreamed                      b) had dreamed                      c) dreamt                      d) was dreaming
- 343) Leila and her husband...into their own flat last weekend. Before that, they had lived with Leila's parents.  
a) had moved                      b) moved                      c) has moved                      d) was moving
- 344) My father retired last week. He .....for the same company all his life.  
a) worked                      b) has worked                      c) had worked                      d) was working
- 345) Some of Edmond's friends accused him .....something he had not done.  
a) off                      b) with                      c) of                      d) about
- 346) They were envious .....him because he was happy and successful.  
a) to                      b) for                      c) on                      d) of
- 347) Edmond was planning to get married .....his fiancée.  
a) to                      b) with                      c) from                      d) by
- 348) After he was arrested, Edmond was sent to prison .....life.  
a) for                      b) to                      c) in                      d) of
- 349) Edmond escaped .....prison and found Faria's hidden treasure.  
a) to                      b) about                      c) from                      d) for
- 350) Edmond objected .....his friends' accusations.  
a) on                      b) to                      c) about                      d) for
- 351) Edmond rescued Valentine .....her cruel family.  
a) from                      b) of                      c) for                      d) to
- 352) After the earthquake, the village was not .....  
a) recognisable                      b) recognise                      c) recognition                      d) recognising
- 353) Some of his .....were his best friends.  
a) accuses                      b) accusations                      c) accusers                      d) accused
- 354) My little brother looked with .....at my new computer game.  
a) envy                      b) envious                      c) enviable                      d) revenge
- 355) She is so clever that she is in the .....situation of being able to choose her university.  
a) envy                      b) envious                      c) enviable                      d) revenge
- 356) He looked at the old man with no sign of .....  
a) recognise                      b) recognition                      c) recognisable                      d) realise
- 357) The .....against Edmond was false.  
a) accusation                      b) accuse                      c) revenge                      d) envy

unit (12)

- 358) .....can be very dangerous, so they shouldn't be given to young children.  
a) Fireworks                      b) Poison                      c) Sweets                      d) Drums
- 359) We scored a goal because the other team's goalkeeper was in the wrong .....  
a) side                      b) position                      c) location                      d) space
- 360) The Eiffel Tower in Paris is one of the world's most famous .....  
a) skyscrapers                      b) site                      c) landscapes                      d) landmarks
- 361) Forty members of our family got together to .....my grandfather's birthday.  
a) commemorate                      b) celebrate                      c) remember                      d) recognise
- 362) If you hit them hard, .....make a very loud noise.  
a) fireworks                      b) lutes                      c) drums                      d) violins
- 363) A/An .....of about twenty thousand people moved slowly towards the king's palace.  
a) procession                      b) occasion                      c) team                      d) organisation
- 364) When the children stopped ....., everyone clapped.  
a) sing                      b) to sing                      c) to singing                      d) singing



- 401) I found university work very difficult, but my friends were always very .....  
a) encouraging                      b) encourage                      c) encouraged                      d) encouragement
- 402) Some students need more .....than others at school.  
a) encouraging                      b) encourage                      c) encouraged                      d) encouragement
- 403) ....., I believe that everyone should study science at school.  
a) Privately                      b) Generally                      c) Personally                      d) Gradually
- 404) She would be a good nurse. She has a very kind .....  
a) behaviour                      b) personality                      c) education                      d) private life
- 405) It was a great football match. Both teams played very .....  
a) passively                      b) violently                      c) personally                      d) positively
- 406) Yesterday, I played a long game of tennis with my brother, .....made me very tired.  
a) what                      b) when                      c) which                      d) who
- 407) The nurse, .....responsibility it is to look after young children, has worked at the hospital for ten years.  
a) who's                      b) whose                      c) who                      d) which
- 408) The person .....does most of the cooking in our family is my mother.  
a) whom                      b) which                      c) who                      d) whose
- 409) 1837 was the year .....Victoria became queen of Britain.  
a) when                      b) where                      c) at which                      d) for which
- 410) I've just read a newspaper article .....the life of a famous woman is described in detail.  
a) when                      b) which                      c) in which                      d) in where
- 411) My sister went to London University, .....she studied history.  
a) when                      b) from which                      c) which                      d) where
- 412) Lord of the Flies is a story .....a group of school boys are shipwrecked on an island.  
a) at which                      b) when                      c) in which                      d) who
- 413) She asked me where I had been, .....I replied, "It's a secret".  
a) in which                      b) to which                      c) where                      d) what
- 414) Tomorrow, I'm going to a meeting .....we're going to discuss women's role in society.  
a) at which                      b) in which                      c) from which                      d) about which
- 415) He says he's busy, .....he really means he doesn't want to go out this evening.  
a) in which                      b) by which                      c) for which                      d) about which
- 416) They said something very cruel, .....I think they should apologise.  
a) to which                      b) by which                      c) from which                      d) for which
- 417) A 14-year-old Japanese boy has become the youngest person to complete a .....voyage across the Pacific Ocean.  
a) lonely                      b) solo                      c) one                      d) trainee
- 418) Before you can fly alone, you need to have a pilot's .....  
a) degree                      b) certificate                      c) licence                      d) qualification
- 419) The .....from London to Cairo takes about four hours.  
a) train                      b) voyage                      c) flying                      d) flight
- 420) Some films are not .....for young children.  
a) cruel                      b) right                      c) suitable                      d) harmful
- 421) Doctors are always trying to find .....new treatments for diseases.  
a) effective                      b) helpful                      c) cure                      d) illness
- 422) My uncle is in .....of the Science Department in a secondary school.  
a) touch                      b) charge                      c) control                      d) comparison
- 423) Your grades are ....., Jena.  
a) impressed                      b) impress                      c) challenging                      d) impressive
- unit (14)*
- 424) Some people .....playing computer games as a waste of time.  
a) think                      b) regard                      c) make                      d) considerate
- 425) Charles Dickens was one of the nineteenth century's most famous .....  
a) writer                      b) playwrights                      c) scientists                      d) storytellers
- 426) After the .....of the day, the children couldn't sleep.  
a) exciting                      b) excited                      c) excitement                      d) excite
- 427) Many people agree that Shakespeare is the most .....writer in the English language.  
a) influential                      b) affective                      c) conventional                      d) influence
- 428) Children who .....other children at school should be sent home.  
a) help                      b) pulley                      c) bully                      d) criticize
- 429) I've always been .....in animals. That's why I'd like to work in a zoo.  
a) interest                      b) interested                      c) interesting                      d) interests
- 430) She finds long train journeys very ..... She really doesn't enjoy them.  
a) bored                      b) tired                      c) exciting                      d) tiring
- 431) He felt very .....after his holiday. He had had a really lovely time.  
a) tired                      b) bored                      c) relaxed                      d) relaxing
- 432) You'd love Australia. It's an/a .....place. You should go.  
a) boring                      b) amazing                      c) amazed                      d) excited
- 433) Jurassic Park is one of the most .....films I've ever seen.  
a) exciting                      b) excited                      c) exhausting                      d) tiring
- 434) I get .....if I have nothing to do.  
a) boredom                      b) bored                      c) boring                      d) bore
- 435) I only met Graham Greene once, .....I've long been interested in his life.  
a) although                      b) because                      c) so                      d) but
- 436) .....his father was a school teacher, his wider family was wealthy and influential in the world of banking.  
a) Although                      b) However                      c) As                      d) Whatever
- 437) Graham was very unhappy at school .....he was regularly bullied.

- a) because of                      b) as                                      c) so                                      d) however
- 438) .....he was at Oxford, he wrote a few poems.
- a) During                              b) Although                              c) However                              d) While
- 439) He didn't earn enough at first, .....he wrote book and film reviews.
- a) so that                              b) so                                      c) so as to                              d) because
- 440) .....being known as a difficult man, I got on very well with him.
- a) Despite                              b) However                              c) Although                              d) On
- 441) .....leaving school, he went to Oxford University.
- a) Despite                              b) However                              c) Although                              d) On
- 442) .....graduating, he became a journalist.
- a) Before                              b) As soon as                              c) After                                      d) On
- 443) .....going to bed last night, I read a chapter of a book.
- a) Before                              b) As soon as                              c) After                                      d) On
- 444) .....waking up this morning, I got up and looked out of the window.
- a) Before                              b) As soon as                              c) After                                      d) On
- 445) .....getting home this evening, I'm going to help my mother.
- a) Before                              b) As soon as                              c) After                                      d) On
- 446) .....being very tired, the man went for a run.
- a) Despite                              b) Because                              c) Though                                      d) In spite
- 447) I've been feeling tired all week, .....I'm going to bed early tonight.
- a) because                              b) so                                      c) as                                      d) but
- 448) On .....the good news, everyone smiled and clapped.
- a) hear                                      b) heard                                      c) hears                                      d) hearing
- 449) .....we ran as fast as we could, we missed the bus.
- a) But                                      b) However                              c) In spite of                              d) Despite the fact that
- 450) After he .....his job, Mounir worked for a children's charity.
- a) losing                                      b) lost                                      c) has lost                              d) had been lost
- 451) She phoned me .....she wanted to know what time I was leaving home.
- a) because                              b) so                                      c) but                                      d) although
- 452) They told him he was sure to pass the test, .....he didn't believe them.
- a) although                              b) so                                      c) but for                              d) however
- 453) .....I was on holiday, I took some great photos.
- a) During                              b) While                              c) What                              d) Although
- 454) .....it never usually rains in Egypt, some European tourists bring umbrellas with them.
- a) Although                              b) However                              c) Whatever                              d) As if
- 455) It's my mother's birthday soon, .....I want to buy her a present.
- a) however                              b) because                              c) so                              d) so that
- 456) We couldn't buy the newspaper .....the shop was closed.
- a) as if                                      b) so                                      c) however                              d) since
- 457) .....really enjoying the book you lent me, I haven't finished it yet.
- a) Despite the fact that                      b) In spite of                              c) Although                              d) But
- 458) My father would have taken you to the airport, .....you didn't ask him.
- a) but for                              b) however                              c) though                              d) because
- 459) My cousin believes in ..... He never plans what he's going to do.
- a) spontaneous                              b) spontaneously                              c) spontaneousness                      d) spontaneity
- 460) I didn't think about what I was doing. I just did it .....
- a) spontaneous                              b) spontaneously                              c) spontaneousness                      d) spontaneity
- 461) Our holiday to Australia was a great ..... We spent two months exploring the country.
- a) adventurous                              b) adventure                              c) adventurer                              d) adventurously
- 462) In some countries, it is the .....to shake hands whenever you meet someone.
- a) conventional                              b) conventionally                              c) convention                              d) conventions
- 463) Watch out! .....you do, don't move!
- a) However                              b) Wherever                              c) Whenever                              d) Whatever

*unit (15)*

- 464) My mother has a special .....for cutting vegetables.
- a) gadget                              b) weapon                              c) instrument                              d) tray
- 465) Ali is really .....about his university course. He can't wait for the beginning of the term.
- a) worried                              b) anxious                              c) enthusiastic                              d) angry
- 466) I'm going to .....some information from the internet for my school project.
- a) surf                                      b) download                              c) upload                              d) study
- 467) The television picture is really clear. You have an enormous .....
- a) eye                                      b) film                                      c) gadget                                      d) screen
- 468) This novel is not .....as an e-book yet, but you'll be able to get it next year.
- a) available                              b) same                                      c) similar                                      d) regarded
- 469) The best thing about a/an .....is that you can easily carry it and read it at any time.
- a) e-book                                      b) cardboard                              c) paperback                              d) e-mail
- 470) My father is a golf ..... He plays and watches it on TV whenever he can.
- a) enthusiasm                              b) enthusiast                              c) enthusiastic                              d) enthusiastically
- 471) Her brother has not shown any .....for any sport of any kind.
- a) enthusiasm                              b) enthusiast                              c) enthusiastic                              d) enthusiastically
- 472) That play is very popular. You'd better check the .....of tickets.
- a) evolution                              b) distinction                              c) date                                      d) availability
- 473) I wanted to complain to the manager of the shop, but he was .....
- a) available                              b) unavailable                              c) invisible                              d) visible
- 474) In the future, every new book .....as an e-book.
- a) will probably be published                      b) will probably publish                      c) will probably have been published                      d) will probably have published

- 475) You can be sure they .....the price when more people buy them.  
 a) 'll be reduced                      b) 'll have reduced                      c) 'll reduce                      d) 'll have been reduced
- 476) Do you think they .....traditional books completely?  
 a) 'll never replace                      b) 'll ever be replaced                      c) 'll ever replace                      d) 'll ever have replaced
- 477) I think most best-sellers .....as e-books.  
 a) will read                      b) will be read                      c) will have read                      d) will be reading
- 478) I'm sure some kinds of books .....  
 a) won't be replaced                      b) won't replace                      c) won't be replacing                      d) will replace
- 479) Think of all the paper that we .....  
 a) 'll be saved                      b) 'll save                      c) 'll have been saved                      d) saving
- 480) By the year 2100, millions of trees and hundreds of forests .....  
 a) will have been saved                      b) will have saved                      c) will save                      d) will be saving
- 481) I predict that in the future, mobile phones will .....smaller.  
 a) make                      b) be made                      c) have made                      d) being made
- 482) By this time next week, I .....my test results.  
 a) will have heard                      b) will have been heard                      c) will hear                      d) will be heard
- 483) We .....less paper if we read e-books.  
 a) will have used                      b) will have used                      c) will use                      d) will be used
- 484) I don't think newspapers will .....  
 a) never be replaced                      b) ever replace                      c) ever be replaced                      d) never replace
- 485) The new underground railway line .....by 2015.  
 a) will have built                      b) had been built                      c) was built                      d) will have been built
- 486) I'm sorry, but your car .....this week.  
 a) had been repaired                      b) will have been repaired                      c) won't be repaired                      d) won't repair
- 487) Today, paper, plastic and glass can all .....  
 a) be recycled                      b) be replaced                      c) be recyclable                      d) be invisible
- 488) Before you can cook these beans, you have to .....them for three hours.  
 a) melt                      b) soak                      c) bleach                      d) taste
- 489) The story is an interesting .....of fact and fiction.  
 a) evolution                      b) encyclopedia                      c) blend                      d) mixture
- 490) You can .....white shirts to keep them looking clean.  
 a) bleach                      b) press                      c) spread                      d) wear
- 491) .....can hold a lot of information and are small enough to carry in your pocket.  
 a) Encyclopedias                      b) CD-ROMs                      c) References                      d) Laptops

### Review (E)

- 492) My parents have always .....me to keep fit by playing sports.  
 a) warned                      b) agreed                      c) encouraged                      d) argued
- 493) When you pass your test, you'll get a driving .....  
 a) permission                      b) licence                      c) paper                      d) certificate
- 494) He does not want to live a/an .....life. He would prefer excitement and adventure.  
 a) conventional                      b) daily                      c) interesting                      d) exciting
- 495) Their television .....is very dirty.  
 a) window                      b) glass                      c) gadget                      d) screen
- 496) .....books used to be very cheap.  
 a) Paper                      b) Paperback                      c) Cardboard                      d) Hard
- 497) Florence Nightingale, .....was born in Italy, went to school in England.  
 a) which                      b) where                      c) that                      d) who
- 498) My uncle went to a school in London, .....he learned to speak English well.  
 a) which                      b) where                      c) who                      d) that
- 499) I went to the bank this morning .....I needed to take out some money.  
 a) so                      b) although                      c) because                      d) and
- 500) I've felt really tired today, .....I went to bed early last night.  
 a) because                      b) so                      c) despite                      d) although
- 501) I hope that by the end of next week, our roof will have been .....  
 a) repair                      b) repairing                      c) repaired                      d) repairs

### unit (16)

- 502) My brother is more .....than me. He gets on with everyone he meets.  
 a) ambitious                      b) social                      c) shy                      d) sociable
- 503) The company received over 100 CVs from interested .....  
 a) applicants                      b) employers                      c) employees                      d) staff
- 504) My bank is an/a .....company. It has been in business for over 100 years.  
 a) evolved                      b) positive                      c) established                      d) organised
- 505) If you need any medicine, there's a .....in the village.  
 a) chemistry                      b) pharmacy                      c) chemist                      d) pharmacist
- 506) My uncle was always ..... He was always looking for a better job.  
 a) ambitious                      b) conscientious                      c) courageous                      d) established
- 507) You're the most .....person I know. You never forget anything and you're never late.  
 a) well-established                      b) well-educated                      c) well-trained                      d) well-organised
- 508) If you want them to interview you for the job, send them your .....  
 a) BA                      b) CV                      c) BC                      d) AD
- 509) I need some medicine. Is there a .....near here?  
 a) pharmacy                      b) clinic                      c) chemistry                      d) supermarket
- 510) Our family has a .....business. It was started by my grandfather in 1935.  
 a) well-established                      b) well-educated                      c) well-trained                      d) well-organised

- 511) Our school is very ..... The staff and students are always on time and everyone knows exactly what they have to do.  
a) established                      b) educated                      c) trained                      d) organised
- 512) When they are applying for a job, some people start their .....with personal details. Others put their qualifications first.  
a) BA                      b) CV                      c) BC                      d) AD
- 513) Ali is the most .....student in the class. He works hard and cares about what he does.  
a) ambitious                      b) conscientious                      c) courageous                      d) established
- 514) It is important for nurses to get on with their patients, so the hospital is looking for .....young people to train.  
a) ambitious                      b) social                      c) shy                      d) sociable
- 515) I have very poor technical ..... Could you help me fix my computer?  
a) skills                      b) features                      c) marks                      d) styles
- 516) To get my degree, I have to complete and pass five out of the six .....  
a) models                      b) muddles                      c) modules                      d) modals
- 517) Getting into university would be my greatest .....  
a) achievement                      b) problems                      c) skill                      d) ambitious
- 518) My sister is a .....nurse at our local hospital. She will get her qualification next year.  
a) trainer                      b) trainee                      c) training                      d) trained
- 519) Most of the houses in our .....are quite old.  
a) neighbour                      b) neighbouring                      c) neighbourly                      d) neighbourhood
- 520) Sara is .....in three languages: Arabic, English and German.  
a) skilful                      b) good                      c) fluent                      d) affluent
- 521) We get on with all our ..... Everyone is so friendly.  
a) neighbours                      b) neighbourhood                      c) enemies                      d) opponents
- 522) The people in this part of town are always very ..... especially if someone needs help.  
a) neighbour                      b) neighbouring                      c) neighbourly                      d) neighbourhood
- 523) Even though he has only been here for six months, he can speak English .....  
a) fluent                      b) fluently                      c) fluency                      d) flintily
- 524) .....is perhaps the most important language skill.  
a) Fluent                      b) Fluently                      c) Fluency                      d) Flintily
- 525) My father has .....many things to be proud of in his life.  
a) reached                      b) arrived                      c) gained                      d) achieved
- 526) When I go to university, I'm going to do a .....science degree.  
a) module                      b) modular                      c) muddle                      d) modularly
- 527) Karim is the most .....player in our team.  
a) skilled                      b) skill                      c) skilful                      d) skilfully

Unit (17)

- 528) Today's newspaper has a very interesting report from one of their .....in India.  
a) correspondents                      b) representative                      c) corresponding                      d) representations
- 529) My grandmother's beautiful .....necklace was a wedding present from her uncle.  
a) peril                      b) brail                      c) pearl                      d) parallel
- 530) Police are looking for the missing car. ....have been searching the river all day.  
a) Drivers                      b) Drovers                      c) Dovers                      d) Divers
- 531) A well-known TV .....is opening a new supermarket in our town tomorrow.  
a) celebrated                      b) celebrity                      c) producer                      d) celebre
- 532) People lost their jobs and businesses closed during that year's terrible .....  
a) depression                      b) drought                      c) starvation                      d) revolution
- 533) I'd like to help my country by working as a .....  
a) civil engineering                      b) civilian                      c) civilized                      d) civil servant
- 534) The programme presenter asked Dr Carter .....about Steinbeck's early life.  
a) talk                      b) talking                      c) to talk                      d) for talking
- 535) Steinbeck's mother taught her son .....  
a) to read                      b) read                      c) reading                      d) reads
- 536) His mother also encouraged him ..... a writer.  
a) becoming                      b) to become                      c) became                      d) becomes
- 537) In The Grapes of Wrath, Steinbeck .....people to think about the problems of the country's poor.  
a) made                      b) suggested                      c) allow                      d) forced
- 538) Ahmed's parents warned him .....university without getting a degree.  
a) to leave                      b) not to leave                      c) leaving                      d) of not leaving
- 539) The teacher .....her students to read The Pearl before the next lesson.  
a) wanted                      b) made                      c) let                      d) warned
- 540) He suggested that she .....home.  
a) went                      b) goes                      c) going                      d) go
- 541) John told Tom .....him the following/next day.  
a) phone                      b) phoning                      c) to phone                      d) phones
- 542) Hoda invited Sara .....dinner with them the following/next week.  
a) for having                      b) to have                      c) have                      d) has
- 543) Mahmoud .....Ahmed to work harder.  
a) warned                      b) suggested                      c) advised                      d) forbade
- 544) The teacher .....George not to be late again.  
a) warned                      b) prevented                      c) made                      d) wondered
- 545) Leila asked Anna .....her to do the shopping.  
a) for help                      b) to help                      c) that help                      d) helping
- 546) Leila asked Anna .....she could help her do the shopping.  
a) wither                      b) weather                      c) whither                      d) whether
- 547) He's .....his son to ride a horse.



- a) well-organised                      b) conscientious                      c) sociable                      d) ambitious  
 585) People understand what I'm saying when I speak Spanish, but I'm not .....  
 a) fluent                      b) ideal                      c) mature                      d) qualified  
 586) The girl tried to .....me to lend her my phone, but I refused.  
 a) treat                      b) enrol                      c) provide                      d) persuade  
 587) One of the supermarkets in our town has 25 .....  
 a) employers                      b) employees                      c) applicants                      d) merchants  
 588) The school .....every student with books, so you don't have to buy any yourself.  
 a) gives                      b) trains                      c) provides                      d) lends  
 589) Aisha's parents asked her .....she had finished her homework.  
 a) weather                      b) where                      c) if                      d) to  
 590) My friend's parents have invited me .....on holiday with them next year.  
 a) for                      b) go                      c) going                      d) to go  
 591) Ali's doctor advised .....to stay at home if he was feeling ill.  
 a) he                      b) him                      c) it                      d) his  
 592) If it isn't too hot tomorrow, I .....go swimming.  
 a) should                      b) must                      c) can't                      d) might  
 593) They .....be at school by eight o'clock every day. School starts at eight.  
 a) have to                      b) should                      c) might                      d) can

*Practice Tests (4-6)*

- 594) You'll have to hurry. Your lesson .....in half an hour,  
 a) is going to start                      b) starts                      c) will start                      d) start  
 595) That tower is one of the town's most famous .....  
 a) landmarks                      b) marks                      c) events                      d) products  
 596) I'd like to get a job in the medical .....  
 a) work                      b) career                      c) occupation                      d) profession  
 597) I wish I .....where I left my jacket.  
 a) know                      b) had known                      c) knew                      d) could know  
 598) Heba wishes she .....all her money at the weekend.  
 a) didn't spend                      b) doesn't spend                      c) hasn't spent                      d) hadn't spent  
 599) My brother .....his ambition when he became a doctor.  
 a) achieved                      b) won                      c) got                      d) made  
 600) After the storm, there was a huge .....of water on the roads.  
 a) floods                      b) number                      c) amount                      d) lot  
 601) Sara felt ill all night because she .....too much the day before.  
 a) had eaten                      b) was eating                      c) eats                      d) has eaten  
 602) Hamdi was very tired yesterday evening because he .....for a school test all day.  
 a) has revised                      b) had been revising                      c) revised                      d) revising  
 603) I really .....to very loud music in public places.  
 a) disagree                      b) argue                      c) can't stand                      d) object  
 604) Ahmed's friends didn't .....him when he returned from a year abroad. He looked so different.  
 a) recognize                      b) remember                      c) see                      d) look  
 605) My friend suggested .....for a picnic in the park.  
 a) go                      b) to go                      c) going                      d) goes  
 606) We're planning .....to Europe for our holiday next year.  
 a) flying                      b) to fly                      c) fly                      d) to flying  
 607) In some countries, people .....the end of the year on December 31st.  
 a) enjoy                      b) celebrate                      c) have fun                      d) party  
 608) In our town, there are musicians who play .....music.  
 a) tradition                      b) national                      c) folk                      d) historical  
 609) Whose .....is it to make sure children arrive safely at school?  
 a) responsible                      b) responsibility                      c) response                      d) respond  
 610) Five pounds .....a lot for a cup of coffee.  
 a) are                      b) cost                      c) pay                      d) is  
 611) In some countries, people use a passport instead of .....card.  
 a) an identity                      b) a personal                      c) a national                      d) an individual  
 612) Sayed .....the train. He was at the station half an hour before the train left.  
 a) can't miss                      b) can't have missed                      c) must have missed                      d) didn't miss  
 613) My friend advised me to see a doctor. I wish I .....her advice now.  
 a) took                      b) take                      c) had taken                      d) have taken  
 614) Did they ever discover the .....of the fire?  
 a) reason                      b) purpose                      c) explanation                      d) cause  
 615) My sister promised .....me after school this afternoon.  
 a) meeting                      b) to meet                      c) met                      d) meet  
 616) I've just finished a novel .....the main character is an 80-year-old man.  
 a) which                      b) in which                      c) who                      d) whose  
 617) Have you heard? They've discovered a/an .....new treatment for flu.  
 a) effective                      b) useless                      c) real                      d) cruel  
 618) She .....sport as a very important part of her life.  
 a) thinks                      b) believes                      c) regards                      d) looks  
 619) On .....that he had passed his driving test, Taha was very happy.  
 a) heard                      b) he heard                      c) to hear                      d) hearing  
 620) There was great .....when our team won the football match.  
 a) procession                      b) imprisonment                      c) excitement                      d) attachment  
 621) He wasn't getting enough exercise .....he joined a sports club.  
 a) because                      b) although                      c) and                      d) so

- 622) I've seen an interesting article on the internet which I have .....onto my computer.  
a) received                      b) done                              c) downloaded                      d) written
- 623) By this time next week, the exam results will .....  
a) have been published              b) have published                      c) publish                              d) be publishing
- 624) I like that photograph on your computer .....  
a) glass                              b) screen                              c) film                              d) front
- 625) Nader is really .....about all kinds of sport. He loves playing and watching it.  
a) interested                      b) active                              c) enthusiastic                      d) keen
- 626) In some modern homes, water .....by energy from the sun.  
a) are heated                      b) heat                              c) is heated                      d) is heating
- 627) My daily .....starts when my alarm clock goes off at 6.30.  
a) routine                              b) habit                              c) custom                              d) way
- 628) There's water all over the floor. Someone .....to turn off the shower.  
a) must forget                      b) must have forgotten                      c) can't have forgotten                      d) can have forgotten
- 629) Her parents .....have meetings with the teachers at her school.  
a) totally                              b) gradually                              c) slowly                              d) regularly
- 630) My brother and I have just had a phone conversation .....we discussed our holiday plans.  
a) which                              b) in which                              c) what                              d) to which
- 631) At the weekend, my aunt asked me what I .....since we last met.  
a) did                              b) was doing                              c) have done                              d) had been doing
- 632) Teachers are always encouraging their students to be .....and hard-working.  
a) conventional                      b) common                              c) confusing                              d) conscientious
- 633) He wanted to know whether anyone .....the book he was reading.  
a) had I seen                      b) has seen                              c) sees                              d) saw
- 634) My sister hasn't finished her course yet. She's still .....  
a) a trainer                              b) an employee                              c) an employer                              d) a trainee
- 635) The best writers force their readers .....about serious questions.  
a) to think                              b) thinking                              c) thought                              d) think
- 636) A new supermarket in our town was opened by a well-known .....yesterday.  
a) celebrity                              b) famous                              c) character                              d) somebody
- 637) I think someone may have .....today's newspaper by mistake.  
a) wasted                              b) thrown                              c) refused                              d) thrown away
- 638) I really .....phone my parents to tell them I'm going to be late home today.  
a) need                              b) must                              c) can                              d) could
- 639) At her first school, she .....to wear a blue uniform.  
a) had                              b) must                              c) could                              d) has
- 640) He is thinking of .....on a Business Studies course at the local college.  
a) entering                              b) applying                              c) enrolling                              d) beginning
- 641) Pupils don't have to pay for their books. The school .....them.  
a) pays                              b) provides                              c) takes                              d) affords

### Answers

301-c	292-c	293-b	294-a	295-d	296-b	297-d	298-d	299-c	300-a
311-b	302-d	303-b	304-a	305-a	306-d	307-c	308-d	309-b	310-c
321-d	312-d	313-a	314-a	315-d	316-c	317-d	318-c	319-c	320-a
331-b	322-a	323-c	324-d	325-c	326-a	327-d	328-d	329-a	330-c
341-c	332-a	333-d	334-b	335-b	336-a	337-c	338-c	339-a	340-d
351-a	342-b	343-b	344-c	345-c	346-d	347-a	348-a	349-c	350-b
361-b	352-a	353-c	354-a	355-c	356-b	357-a	358-a	359-b	360-d
371-c	362-c	363-a	364-d	365-d	366-d	367-c	368-b	369-d	370-a
381-b	372-b	373-d	374-d	375-b	376-a	377-a	378-b	379-a	380-b
391-c	382-d	383-c	384-d	385-a	386-b	387-a	388-d	389-c	390-d
401-a	392-a	393-d	394-b	395-b	396-a	397-c	398-d	399-c	400-b
411-d	402-d	403-c	404-b	405-d	406-c	407-b	408-c	409-a	410-c
421-a	412-c	413-b	414-a	415-b	416-d	417-b	418-c	419-d	420-c
431-c	422-b	423-d	424-b	425-d	426-c	427-a	428-c	429-b	430-d
441-d	432-b	433-a	434-b	435-d	436-a	437-b	438-d	439-b	440-a
451-a	442-c	443-a	444-a	445-c	446-a	447-b	448-d	449-d	450-b
461-b	452-d	453-b	454-a	455-c	456-d	457-b	458-b	459-d	460-b
471-a	462-c	463-d	464-a	465-c	466-b	467-d	468-a	469-c	470-b
481-b	472-d	473-b	474-a	475-c	476-c	477-b	478-a	479-b	480-a
491-b	482-a	483-c	484-c	485-d	486-c	487-a	488-b	489-d	490-a
501-c	492-c	493-b	494-a	495-d	496-b	497-d	498-b	499-c	500-d
511-d	502-d	503-a	504-c	505-b	506-a	507-d	508-b	509-a	510-a
521-a	512-b	513-b	514-d	515-a	516-a	517-a	518-b	519-d	520-c
531-b	522-c	523-b	524-c	525-d	526-b	527-c	528-a	529-c	530-d
541-c	532-a	533-d	534-c	535-a	536-b	537-d	538-b	539-a	540-d
551-c	542-b	543-c	544-a	545-b	546-d	547-a	548-c	549-b	550-a
561-b	552-d	553-a	554-c	555-a	556-d	557-b	558-d	559-b	560-c
571-a	562-c	563-d	564-d	565-b	566-c	567-d	568-b	569-c	570-a
581-d	572-a	573-b	574-d	575-b	576-d	577-c	578-b	579-a	580-b
591-b	582-b	583-d	584-c	585-a	586-d	587-b	588-c	589-c	590-d
601-a	592-d	593-a	594-b	595-a	596-d	597-c	598-d	599-a	600-c
611-a	602-b	603-d	604-a	605-c	606-b	607-b	608-c	609-b	610-d
621-d	612-b	613-c	614-d	615-b	616-b	617-a	618-c	619-d	620-c
631-d	622-c	623-a	624-b	625-c	626-c	627-a	628-b	629-d	630-b
641-b	632-d	633-a	634-d	635-a	636-a	637-d	638-b	639-a	640-c

### Second term mistakes

- 78) Achieve is to fail to do/in doing something you wanted to do.
- 79) Diabetes is a disease in which there is too much water in the blood.
- 80) Gradually means quickly, over a long time.
- 81) A result is something that happen because of something else.
- 82) To specialise is to work on many particular subject.
- 83) A theory is an explanation for something which has yet been proved to be true.
- 84) I wish the school holidays are longer.
- 85) If only I haven't forgotten where I put my mobile phone.
- 86) Leila wishes she can read faster.
- 87) I'm really tired this morning. I wish I had sleep more last night.
- 88) Ali wishes he can come to your party, but he's not feeling well.
- 89) I wish I didn't lent her my dictionary. She's taken it home with her.
- 90) He hopes winning a prize for his school work.
- 91) I regret to go to the cinema. It was not a very good film.
- 92) She offered taking me to the station in her car.
- 93) We've just finished to watch a TV programme about Egyptian history.
- 94) When did you decide to studying biology at university?
- 95) We've arranged picking my brother up from the airport.
- 96) Ali is planning to spent all weekend revising for next week's maths test.
- 97) Their teacher agreed helping them find an English pen friend.
- 98) It was nearly midnight by the time he has finished his homework last night.
- 99) She is very hungry when the rescue team found her. She had eaten nothing for nearly three days.
- 100) If only they write more quickly.
- 101) I wish there is something I could do to keep fit.
- 102) She has decided studying medicine when she goes to university.
- 103) My sister suggested to go to the zoo at the weekend.
- 104) Argue for is to explain why something shouldn't be done.
- 105) A degree is a qualification given to someone who has successfully finished a secondary school course.
- 106) Encourage is to try to get someone not to do something.
- 107) Personal means to do without a person's private life.
- 108) Positive is to have a bad effect.
- 109) Rule is a position that someone has in an activity or situation.
- 110) Inspector is something whose job it is to check that something is of a good enough standard.
- 111) Lifestyle is the way that someone dresses their life.
- 112) Find out is to give information about something or someone.
- 113) Funeral is a ceremony for someone who has just married.
- 114) Lead to is to case something to happen.
- 115) Conventional means thinking and behaving in the different way as other people.
- 116) Spontaneous means done because you suddenly planned to do it.
- 117) Adventure means exciting and involving danger.
- 118) Queen Victoria, who husband Albert died in 1861, lived until 1901.
- 119) The town which I was born is in the northeast of the country.
- 120) Mustafa was happy despite he came third in the race.
- 121) On hear the good news, Eman phoned her parents.
- 122) We won't be tell the results of the test until the day after tomorrow.
- 123) Scientists believe that by 2020, a replacement for oil will have found.
- 124) A celebrity is a person who is known to a few people.
- 125) A civil servant is someone who works in a restaurant.
- 126) A correspondent is someone who writes letters to a newspaper.
- 127) A depression is a long period when the economy of country does well.
- 128) A diver is someone who swims above water.
- 129) Pearl is a small, round, blue object that is used in jewellery.
- 130) My friend asked me if had I enjoyed reading the book she had lent me.
- 131) Parents often warn their children to not cross the road without looking.
- 132) I don't expect them arriving yet. They're often late.
- 133) You can buying clothes in some supermarkets now.
- 134) If you couldn't see what you want in a shop, you should ask an assistant.
- 135) You must to remember to post this letter. It's very important.
- 136) I want to make some sandwiches. Have we got a bread?
- 137) Soha shouldn't eat too many sweets because she is chronic.
- 138) I asked my mother whether had she seen my English book.
- 139) Sylvia is on a low-fat diet because recently she's lost a lot of weight.
- 140) She has always enjoyed to go to the theatre.
- 141) Alfred Farag is a famous Egyptian playwright.
- 142) When I have nothing to do, I feel really boring.
- 143) The person who's job is to clean the school is not here today. He's ill.
- 144) When Umm Kalthoum died, thousands of people attended her wedding.
- 145) You should reinvent paper, rather than throw it away.
- 146) Some people believe that in the future, water will use as a fuel for cars.
- 147) Despite he is 68, my grandfather is still working.
- 148) I wish I can read more quickly.
- 149) She asked her friend weather she had finished her homework.
- 150) My parents have invited one of my friends stay for the weekend.
- 151) When Wagdy was five years old, he was sting by a scorpion.
- 152) I need to go to the university to buy some medicine.
- 153) A civil servant is someone who works for the army.

*Model answers*

78) fail to – manage to/fail in – succeed in	79) water – sugar	80) quickly – slowly
81) happen – happens	82) many- one	83) has – hasn't
84) are – were	85) haven't – hadn't	86) can – could
87) sleep – slept	88) can – could	89) didn't – hadn't
90) winning – to win	91) to go – going	92) taking – to take
93) to watch – watching	94) studying – study	95) picking – to pick
96) spent – spend	97) helping – to help	98) has – had
99) is – was	100) write – wrote/could write	101) is – was/were
102) studying – to study	103) to go – going	104) shouldn't – should
105) secondary school – university	106) not to do – to do	107) without - with
108) bad - good	109) rule - role	110) something - someone/somebody
111) dresses – lives	112) give – get	113) married – died
114) case – cause	115) different – same	116) planned – want
117) adventure – adventurous	118) who – whose	119) which – where/in which
120) despite – although	121) hear – hearing	122) tell – told
123) have found – have been found	124) few – many	125) a restaurant - the civil service (for a government department)
126) writes letters to - reports for	127) well - badly	130) had I - I had
128) above - under	129) blue - white	133) buying – buy
131) to not - not to	132) arriving - to arrive	136) a- any
134) couldn't - can't	135) to remember – remember	139) lost – gained/put on
137) chronic - diabetic/overweight	138) had she - she had	142) boring – bored
140) to go – going	141) playwright – playwright	145) reinvent – recycle
143) who's – whose	144) wedding – funeral	148) can – could
146) use - be used	147) despite – although	151) sting – stung
149) weather – whether	150) stay - to stay	
152) university – pharmacy	153) army - government	

## The Prisoner of Zenda

The story begins with Rassendyll leaving England to visit Ruritania. He wishes to attend the coronation of King Rudolf the Fifth. He ends up replacing the king at his coronation. Rassendyll and others try to rescue the king (Rudolf the Fifth) who is a prisoner in Zenda. In the end, the king is freed. Rassendyll leaves Ruritania to return home.

The plot can be divided into three:

Before the coronation of King Rudolf the Fifth.

The coronation of King Rudolf the Fifth (Rassendyll)

After the coronation

### Before the coronation

- Rassendyll leaves England to visit Ruritania.
- He stays in Zenda at an inn.
- He meets Colonel Sapt, Fritz and King Rudolf the Fifth.
- The King is poisoned.
- He replaces the King as Rudolf the Fifth.
- He goes to Strelsau to be crowned as King of Ruritania.

### The coronation

- The ceremony is great.
- Rassendyll (acting as King) passes through the Old Town and New Town.
- Rassendyll is crowned King Rudolf the Fifth.

### After the coronation

- Rassendyll leaves the coronation with Princess Flavia in a coach.
- Colonel Sapt and Rassendyll return to Zenda (the hunting lodge) to get the King.
- The King is missing and Josef is killed in the hunting lodge.
- Colonel Sapt and Rassendyll return to Strelsau.
- Rassendyll continues the game (acting as King).
- Rassendyll meets three of the Famous Six (the foreigners). They are out to kill Rassendyll.
- Rassendyll escapes from three of the Famous Six at the summer house.
- Rassendyll leaves for Zenda with intention of rescuing the King.
- Rassendyll escapes death. Rupert of Hentzau stabs him on his shoulder.
- Rassendyll swims across the moat to examine the pipe.
- He kills Max Holf.
- Rassendyll goes again to the castle of Zenda to rescue the King.
- Rupert of Hentzau fights with Michael and kills him.
- Rassendyll fights with Detchard and kills him.
- Rupert escapes and Rassendyll admits he is not the real King.
- The real King is safe but is weak.
- Rassendyll leaves Ruritania and returns home to England.
- Rassendyll learnt that a person with a position in society has responsibilities.

## Characters

### Rudolf Rassendyll

He is a rich Englishman. He is 29 years old. He is well-educated and intelligent. He does not believe in working for a living because he is comfortable with his inheritance and social status. He is fun-loving and adventurous. He is kind and compassionate. He agrees to impersonate Rudolf the Fifth to help him save his throne. He is a man of honour. He is a brave warrior who risks his life to rescue the King.

### King Rudolf the Fifth

He's the king of Ruritania who loves and hunting. He's not respected by many of his people as he is always abroad. He's carefree and humorous. He laughs loudly and easily. He's kidnapped and imprisoned by his brother, Duke Michael. He's saved by Rudolf and regains his throne. He becomes a more responsible King after his traumatic ordeal. He marries Princess Flavia.

### Colonel Sapt:

He's the King's chief adviser. He's firm but kind. He is wise, intelligent and careful. He's dutiful, loyal and faithful to King Rudolf. He persuades Rudolf to impersonate the King to save his throne. He helps and guides Rudolf in all his formal duties. He's a brave warrior and would not hesitate to sacrifice his life for the King. He believes in fate as he believes it is fate that has sent Rudolf to save the King.

Fritz von Tarlenheim: He is the king's (Rudolf) right-hand man. He is a loyal friend and advisor to the King. He helps Rudolf in his role as an impersonator. He helps Colonel Sapt to rescue the King. He is brave and daring in the rescue mission to save the King.

Princess Flavia: She is a beautiful princess who is engaged to the King. She is sweet and caring. She is a cousin to King Rudolf the Fifth. She is observant and she notices some differences between Rudolf Rassendyll and King Rudolf. She does not know that Rudolf Rassendyll is an impersonator. She worries about Rudolf's safety and welfare. She will not hesitate to go to Rudolf when she hears that he is ill or in trouble. She marries the King and becomes the queen of Ruritania.

### Duke Michael

He is half-brother of Rudolf the Fifth. He is the Duke of Strelsau in Ruritania. He spends a lot of time with the people. He is popular and many people want him to be King. He is ambitious, cunning, wicked and cruel. He kidnapped King Rudolf with the intention of killing him. He has loyal supporters especially his devoted 'Famous Six'. He is killed by Rupert of Hentzau.

Antoinette de Mauban: She is a beautiful, tall French widow. She is about 30 years old and is deeply in love with the Duke. She is determined because she tries to find a way to stop Duke Michael from becoming King and therefore marrying Princess Flavia. She is aware of Duke's wickedness and evil scheme to kill the King. She betrays the Duke when she informs Rudolf of the Duke's plan to kill the king. She helps Rudolf to escape from his enemies.

## Chapter One

### Summary:

Rudolf Rassendyll was eating when Rose (his sister-in-law) came in. She told him that he needs to find a job. He told her that he was rich and needn't work as he was part of the Rassendyll family. She was annoyed because her family wasn't as rich as his. Robert came in and saw Rose angry. Rudolf spoke German, French, Italian and Spanish. He was a strong swordsman, good with a gun, good at riding a horse. Rose told him that Jacob Borrodaile offered him a job in an embassy in six months' time. Rudolf accepted the job and decided to visit Ruritania to spend the six months. In 1733, Countess Amelia Rassendyll married one of the royal family (the Elphbergs). Rudolf was the latest to have red hair like the Elphbergs. Rassendyll decided to attend the Coronation of King Rudolf the Fifth, which was to take place in Strelsau, Ruritania. He told Rose he was going to write a book about social problems. He travelled to Paris and called on his friends; George Featherly, (worked at the embassy), and Bertram Bertrand, (a journalist). Bertram told him he met Antoinette de Mauban, a wealthy and ambitious lady, who was invited to see the coronation by Duke Michael (He's the half-brother to the King of Ruritania). Rudolf travelled to Dresden and then to Ruritania. There, the guards stared at him in surprise. The Coronation has been brought forward. Rassendyll was unable to get a room to stay in Strelsau. He decided to spend the night at an inn in Zenda where he could see the famous castle. An old lady and her two daughters ran the inn. He was told about Duke Michael and the fight for the throne. The next morning, Rassendyll took a walk in the forest. He met Colonel Sapt and Fritz von Tarlenheim. They served King Rudolf and were loyal to him. They told him that he looks exactly like their king. At that moment King Rudolf appeared. He was shocked by the resemblance between himself and Rassendyll.

### Pre-reading questions:

1. This story is set in Europe in the 1890s. How did people travel then? How did they communicate between cities quickly?

They had horses, coaches/wagons, and also trains. They could send letters by post or messages by telegram.

2. What kinds of things did upper-class people do? Where did they get their money from if they didn't work?

They often had a life of leisure. Their money might come from investments in businesses or from rents they collected on land that they owned.

### A. Answer these questions:

1. Why doesn't Rudolf Rassendyll work?

He belongs to a rich important family and doesn't need to work.

2. What kind of work does Rose suggest Rudolf should do?

She wants him to take a job in an embassy, working for Sir Jacob Borrodaile.

3. Why has the Rassendyll family been interested in the Elphberg family?

Countess Amelia Rassendyll married a member of the Elphberg family many years ago. Many of her descendants look like the royal family of Ruritania (the Elphbergs). Rudolf looks like an Elphberg.

4. Where does Rassendyll decide to travel to? What does he tell his family about his plans?

He travels to Ruritania to see the coronation of the new king. He doesn't tell his family that. He says he is going to go walking in the Alps and write a book about social problems in the country.

5. What does the owner of the inn think of Michael Duke of Strelsau?

She thinks he should be the King because the real King only likes hunting and good food.

6. Why does Rassendyll decide to walk through the forest the next day?

He wants to see the forest where the King is staying.

7. Who does Rassendyll meet in the forest? Why are they surprised to see him?

He meets Colonel Sapt and Fritz von Tarlenheim, and then the King. They are surprised because he looks almost exactly like the King.

### B. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1. Rudolf is Lord Burlesdon.

His brother, Robert is Lord Burlesdon.

2. Rudolf speaks French as well as he speaks English.

Rudolf speaks German as well as he speaks English.

**3. Many members of the Ruritanian royal family have long hair.**

**Many members of the Ruritanian royal family have red hair.**

**4. George Featherly works at the embassy in Ruritania.**

**George Featherly works at the embassy in Paris, France.**

**5. The Duke of Strelsau is said to be a stupid man.**

**The Duke of Strelsau is said to be a clever man.**

**6. Rudolf sits with Antoinette on the train.**

**They are on the same train but do not see or speak with each other.**

**7. The King has always lived in Ruritania.**

**Duke Michael has always lived in Ruritania.**

**8. A moat goes around the Duke's mansion and his castle.**

**The moat is only around the castle, not the mansion.**

**9. Fritz recognises the name of Rassendyll.**

**Colonel Sapt recognises the name of Rassendyll.**

**10. Rassendyll and the King look so very different.**

**Rassendyll and the King look almost exactly alike.**

**C. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:**

**(1) Countess Rose marries someone from the royal family of Ruritania.**

**(2) Rudolf Rassendyll studies at a Spanish university.**

**(3) Rudolf Rassendyll says he is going to go walking in the Himalayas.**

**(4) Rassendyll travels to Paris and then to Strelsau.**

**(5) Rassendyll and Flavia take the same train to Dresden.**

**(6) Rassendyll gets off the train at Strelsau.**

**(7) The King invites Rassendyll to stay with his family in Strelsau.**

**(8) Rassendyll sees the Castle of Dresden.**

**(9) Colonel Sapt and Fritz von Tarlenheim meet Robert Rassendyll.**

**D. Read this quotation and answer the questions:**

**"To a man like me, opportunities are responsibilities."**

**1. Who says this and when?**

**Rudolf Rassendyll says this while he is eating breakfast with his sister-in-law.**

**2. What does the person mean by this?**

**He means that if an opportunity comes, he takes it but he doesn't look for work or responsibilities.**

**3. Do you think a person like this is very serious about work or life?**

**Opinions may vary. But his sister-in-law does not think that he is very serious about work and life with this attitude.**

**"He's always lived in Ruritania and he cares about the people, so people like him."**

**1. Who says this to whom?**

**The innkeeper (inn owner) says this to Rassendyll.**

**2. Who is the person talking about?**

**She's talking about Duke Michael, the Duke of Strelsau.**

**3. What more does the speaker think about the person?**

**She wishes that he would be the King.**

**a. Answer the following questions:**

**1. Why was Rose angry with Rudolf at breakfast?**

**She was angry because Rudolf didn't want to work or have any responsibilities.**

**2. Why did Rassendyll decide to go to Ruritania?**

**He wanted to see the coronation of the new King of Ruritania.**

**3. Why did the innkeeper like Duke Michael more than the King?**

**Duke Michael had always lived in Ruritania and cared about the people. The King had lived abroad and the people didn't know him.**

**4. How could the old castle of Zenda be reached? How could the mansion be reached?**

**The old castle could be reached only by a drawbridge. The mansion could be reached by a road.**

**b. Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:**

**"The King likes to live well. Let's say he prefers eating to action, but he's a kind man and he's our King. We'd do anything for him."**

**1. Who does Fritz say this to?**

**Fritz says this to Rassendyll.**

**2. In what way is the King like the listener?**

**They both like to live well and not to work.**

**3. How does the King's character cause a problem for him that night?**

**He likes to eat too much and he ate a lot of the poisoned cakes that Duke Michael sent.**

**c. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:**

**1. George Featherly took the same train as Rassendyll from Paris to Ruritania.**

**Antoinette de Mauban took the same train as Rassendyll from Paris to Ruritania.**

**2. Fritz's brother was Lord Burlesdon.**

**Rassendyll's brother was Lord Burlesdon.**

**Now test yourself**

**A) Answer the following questions:**

**1) What is the setting (time and place) of The Prisoner of Zenda?**

**2) How old is Rudolf when the events of the story start?**

**3) According to Rose, how is Rudolf Rassendyll different from his brother Robert?**

**4) Mention three skills that Rudolf Rassendyll has.**

**B) Read the quotation, then answer the questions:**

**"Why should I do anything? I have nearly enough money to do anything I want to (no one ever has quite enough money to do that, of course), and I enjoy an important position in society."**

**1) Who said this?**

**2) To whom was it said?**

**3) Do you agree that people who have a lot of money should do nothing? Explain your point of view.**

**C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:**

**1) Rudolf Rassendyll told Rose he was going to go walking in the West Indies.**

**2) The King invited Rassendyll to stay with his family in Strelsau.**

**3) Countess Rose is the mother-in-law of Rudolf Rassendyll.**

**4) Countess Amelia married a member of the Ruritanian royal family, the Rassendylls.**

**5) Countess Amelia is a wealthy and ambitious woman.**

**6) The Duke of Strelsau is Robert, the brother of Rudolf Rassendyll.**

**7) Bertram Bertrand works in the British Embassy in Paris.**

**8) Fritz von Tarlenheim is an older man, a soldier, who works for the King.**

**9) Josef is a servant of the Duke of Strelsau.**

**10) Colonel Sapt is a younger gentleman who serves the King.**

**11) Duke of Strelsau is Michael, son of the future King of Ruritania.**

**Read the following quotation then answer the questions:**

**1) "You're 29 years old. Are you ever going to do anything useful?"**

***Rose to Rudolf Rassendyll.***

**2) "Why should I do anything? I have nearly enough money to do anything I want to."**

***Rudolf Rassendyll to Rose.***

**3) "He also realises his position in society has responsibilities."**

***Rose to Rudolf Rassendyll.***

**4) "You've probably heard of her. She's a lady who's well known for her wealth and ambition."**

***Bertram to Rudolf.***

**5) "I feel quite sorry for the Duke, but it's right that the older brother becomes king."**

***Rassendyll to the old lady/the owner of the inn.***

**6) "Although you look like identical twins, you do not have identical personalities or skills."**

***Colonel Sapt to Rudolf Rassendyll.***

**7) "Let's say he prefers eating to action."**

***Fritz to Rudolf Rassendyll.***

**8) "Perhaps we are alike then, because I like to have an easy life, too!"**

***Rudolf Rassendyll to Fritz and Sapt.***

## CHAPTER TWO

### Summary:

The King asked Sapt and Fritz about Rassendyll. He knew that Rassendyll was his cousin. Fritz and Sapt thought that Rassendyll shouldn't go to Strelsau. The King invited him for dinner. They went to the hunting lodge where Josef (the King's loyal servant) showed them into a dining room. After a big meal, Josef (the servant) brought them some delicious cakes Duke Michael asked him to give the King. The King ate hungrily but Rassendyll ate one of the cakes. They went to bed. They were to leave at six in the morning. Colonel Sapt threw Rassendyll with water to awake him at five o'clock. The King was breathing heavily. He was poisoned from the cakes Duke Michael sent because he wanted to be king. If the King wasn't to be crowned that day, Michael would take the crown. Sapt, Fritz and Rudolf thought about what to do. Sapt's idea was that Rassendyll would go to Strelsau and be crowned. Rudolf refused as people would realise him. Fritz told him that his German was perfect and he would do it or the King would be dead or in prison. Rassendyll agreed. They hid the King in the hunting lodge cellar and will come back after the coronation to take the King while Rassendyll would leave. Johann's mother watched (overheard) them. They locked her in the cellar with the King. Josef dressed Rudolf in the King's clothes. They set off on horses to the station. Sapt told Rudolf about the King's family, likes, interests, weaknesses and servants and how to behave. They took the train to Strelsau. At Strelsau station, they were met by soldiers and people cheered "God save the King". Rassendyll had his breakfast and left the restaurant. Marshal Strakencz (an important person in the army) met them with a group of soldiers. The capital city was partly new where rich people lived and they supported the King, and partly old where people were crowded into tiny old houses and they supported the Duke who gave them hope for a better future. In the streets people clapped and cheered. Rassendyll, the pretend king waved to them. On a balcony, Rudolf saw Antoinette de Mauban. He feared she would call out that he wasn't the real King.

### Pre-Reading

1. Recall why Rassendyll looks like the King of Ruritania.

Rassendyll is a descendant of Countess Amelia, who married a member of the Elphberg family, the royal family of Ruritania. (He and the King are distant cousins.)

2. Recall what you know about the personality of the King. Why don't many people know what he looks like?

He likes hunting and good food. He is not very active and that he is kind. Not many people know what he looks like because he has lived most of his life abroad and he doesn't go out much among the people.

### Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Fritz says that it is not a good time for Rassendyll to visit Strelsau? How does the King react to Fritz's suggestion, and what does that tell you about the King?

Answers may vary. Perhaps Fritz thinks there will be problems with someone who looks so much like the King. The King seems surprised by the suggestion (He says, "What?") and asks Sapt what he thinks. Perhaps it means that the King is not very wise, or that he depends too much on other people for advice.

2. Why don't Fritz and Sapt eat very much? What advice do they give the King? Does he listen to them? They don't want to overeat because they have to get up early the next day. They advise the King not to eat too much. He doesn't listen to them.

3. What happens at the end of the meal? What is the result the next day?

The servant brings some cakes from the Duke. The King eats a lot of them and is poisoned. He can't be woken up the next day.

4. Why does the Duke poison the King?

He hopes that the King will miss the coronation and that he (the Duke) will become the King instead.

5. Is Rassendyll also poisoned? Why isn't he as sick as the King?

He is probably also poisoned because they have to throw water in his face to wake him up. But he ate only one cake, so he didn't eat as much poison. The King eats more, so he receives more poison.

6. Rassendyll tells himself that he has no choice but to pretend to be the King. Do you think he has a choice? Is there something else they can do?

Answers will vary.

7. How and when will they get the King to Strelsau?

They will hide the King in the cellar of the lodge. At night, after the coronation, Sapt and Rassendyll will come back and get the King. Sapt will take him back to the palace, and Rassendyll will leave the country.

8. Who overhears their plan? What do they do with the person?

Johann's mother (who is a servant to the Duke) overhears the plan. They tie her up and lock her in the cellar with the King. Josef will let her out later.

9. Why do they go to the station early instead of waiting for Duke Michael's guards?

The Duke's guards have probably been told to kidnap or kill the King. They want to get out of the lodge and be on their way to the capital before the Duke's men come.

10. What is the first thing they do when they reach the capital? Why aren't the people from the palace at the station in Strelsau to meet them?

The first thing they do is eat breakfast at the train station. The palace people aren't there yet because the King (Rassendyll) arrived earlier than planned.

11. Why is Rassendyll afraid when he sees Antoinette de Mauban?

Her expression changes, so he thinks she recognises that he is not the real King. He is afraid that she will shout out and tell others.

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1. Rassendyll's face is a little different from the Duke's face. (King's)

2. The King invites Rassendyll to eat with him in Strelsau. (the hunting lodge in Zenda)

3. Sapt and Johann believe that Duke Michael has poisoned the King. (Fritz)

4. Duke Michael wants to be the Duke. (King)

5. It is Rassendyll's idea to pretend to be the King for the coronation. (Sapt's)

6. Michael's men will hide the King in the cellar. (Sapt and Fritz)

7. They plan to bring the real King back to Zenda that same night. (Strelsau)

8. Josef and Johann's mother are locked in the cellar. (The King)

9. Marshal Strakencz realises that Rassendyll is not the King. (does not realise)

10. Antoinette de Mauban calls out, "That is not the real King!" (Rassendyll is afraid that she will)

Answer the following questions:

1) Why wasn't Rassendyll as sick as the King was?

2) Why did Fritz and Sapt look up Johann's mother with the King?

3) Why was Rassendyll afraid when he saw Antoinette de Mauban on the balcony?

4) Why did Duke Michael poison the King?

2) How long did Rassendyll expect to pretend to be the King?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

(1) Fritz dresses Rassendyll in the King's clothes.

(2) The Duke invites Rassendyll to have dinner with him.

(3) Fritz throws water at Rassendyll to wake him up.

(4) Max's mother and the King are locked in the cellar.

(5) Fritz asks Rassendyll to pretend to be the King.

(6) Marshal Strelsau and Sapt ride with Rassendyll.

(7) The King invited Rassendyll to stay with his family in Strelsau.

(8) The rich people who had always lived well would support the Duke.

(9) Sapt and Fritz believed that Rassendyll had poisoned the King.

(10) Rassendyll had to go to Dresden and pretend to be the King.

Read the quotations and answer the questions.

"Meanwhile, I'll have some breakfast! The King is hungry!"

1. Who says this to whom?

Rassendyll (disguised as the King) says this to Sapt and Fritz.

2. Where and when does he say this?

In the train station at Strelsau. They have just arrived but they are early, so Rassendyll will eat first.

3. What does this show you about the speaker?

(Answers may vary.) He is feeling a little more relaxed and acting more like the King.

"God save both Kings."

1. Who said this and where was he?

Sapt said this in the restaurant at the train station in Strelsau.

2. What did the people say just before this?

The people said, "God save the King!"

3. Why does the speaker say "both Kings"? Who is he talking about?

He said this because the real King was poisoned and the pretending King was to take his place well. His position depended on it. He is talking about Rassendyll and King Rudolf.

Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

“Nervous. I’m not made of stone, you know”.

- 1) Who said this to Sapt?
- 2) Where were they when this was said?
- 3) Why was the speaker nervous?

Read the quotation, then answer the questions:

1) "You must forgive me if I seemed surprised, as it's not every day that you see your double!"  
*The King to Rassendyll.*

2) "First you must eat with me tonight. You don't meet a new cousin every day!"  
*The King to Rassendyll.*

3) "The Duke said I was to give you this at the end of your meal ."  
*Josef, the servant, to the King.*

4) "People would realise that I'm not the King! And don't forget that I'm English!"  
*Rassendyll to Sapt.*

5) "We won't wait for Michael's guards but leave for Strelsau at once."  
*Sapt to Fritz and Rassendyll.*

6) "You and I will leave and come back here on our horses."  
*Sapt to Rassendyll.*

7) "But we are an hour earlier than they expect, so there'll be no one to meet us."  
*Sapt to Rassendyll.*

8) "Meanwhile, I'll have some breakfast! The King is hungry!"  
*Rassendyll to Sapt.*

9) "God save both Kings."  
*Sapt to himself.*

### CHAPTER THREE

#### Summary:

Marshal Strakencz led Rassendyll (the King) through the old part of the town where the people supported the Duke. Rassendyll asked the Marshal to order his soldiers to ride ahead. He decided to ride through the old part alone so that the people see that their King trusts them. Sapt was worried because if the King was killed, his position would become difficult. When the pretend King rode alone, he saw the narrow streets and the cheering people. When Rassendyll reached the palace, it was time for the coronation. He saw a lot of people and the beautiful Princess Flavia and Duke Michael. There, he was crowned. He was announced King and read out the promises. Duke Michael shook his hands with anger and congratulated him. He seemed to realise Rassendyll wasn't the real King. He went in a coach around the streets with the Princess. Flavia told him that he looked different and serious. She was surprised that he rode through the old town alone and told him people must have appreciated that. When they returned to the palace, he sat at a table next to Michael with Sapt behind him. Later Fritz blamed him for riding alone through the old town and warned him of Duke Michael. Sapt told him that Michael was planning something and asked him to leave as soon as he could. But he needed a permit from the King. Sapt copied the King's signature on a form. Sapt asked Fritz to guard the King's bedroom and told him he mustn't to let anyone in not even Michael. Rassendyll and Sapt left through a panel in the wall which led to a secret passage. They rode their horses away. When they reached a city gate, Sapt gave the gate keeper's daughter the form to show to her father. They drove quickly. On the way, they stopped at an inn so that the horses could drink. They set off fast when they heard someone following them until they reached a fork in the road. To the right led to the lodge, to the left was the castle. They got off the horses and hid in the trees to see who was behind them. They saw the Duke and Max Holf (Johann's brother), who decided to go the castle. Rassendyll and Sapt rode to the lodge fast. There, they saw six torn handkerchiefs which Sapt had used to tie the old woman (Johann's mother). The door of the cellar was open. When they opened another door inside the cellar, it was dark inside. Rassendyll entered with a candle where he saw Josef's body. Sapt thought the Duke's men got the King. That's why Max Holf said all's well. Rassendyll asked Sapt to return to Strelsau and catch Michael before killing the King. Sapt thought that the old woman told the Duke somehow. They went there to kidnap the King. Sapt decided to worry the Duke. Sapt asked Rassendyll to continue pretending to be the King.

**Pre-reading questions:**

1. At the end of the last chapter, Rassendyll was just starting to ride through the city. Who did he see that might recognise him?

Antoinette de Mauban.

2. What do kings and their people usually do before and after a coronation? Do you think any of these will be especially dangerous for Rassendyll?

Usually there is a parade through the city before and after the actual crowning. The King will also meet important people from his country and from other countries. (Students' opinions about the dangers.)

**Answer the following questions:**

1. What kind of people live in the old part of the city? What does Rassendyll do when the Marshal wants him to ride through the old part of town?

The people in the old part are poor and many of them are loyal to Duke Michael. Rassendyll tells the soldiers to ride ahead and behind him, not next to him, so that he can show the people that he trusts them.

2. Why is Sapt so anxious about Rassendyll's decision to ride alone through the old town?

He knows that the people in the old town support the Duke and he is afraid that Rassendyll will be hurt or attacked there.

3. Why does Duke Michael's face turn white when he sees "the King" (Rassendyll)?

He thought that the King was still in Zenda (because he had poisoned him), so he is surprised to see the King here at the coronation.

4. Does Michael realise that this is not the real King? How do you know?

Yes, Michael knows Rassendyll is not the real King. First, Michael knows (or thinks) that the King is poisoned and still in Zenda. And the words in the story tell us: "No one else ... seemed to realise that I was not the real King." This means Michael realised it but no other person.

5. Does the Princess know that this is not the real King? What does she say about him?

She thinks this is the real King, but she says that he has changed. He is more tired and serious, and also thinner.

6. Why do Rassendyll and Sapt need a permit to leave the city?

Michael controls the city and he has had news from Zenda, so he won't want people to leave the city.

7. How do they get a permit from the King?

Sapt can write like the King and he signs the paper.

8. What does Fritz do while Sapt and Rassendyll go to Zenda?

He stays and guards the bedroom. He must not let anyone inside the room.

9. How do Sapt and Rassendyll get out of the palace? Why do they go this way?

They go through a secret passage in the wall and out of a secret back door. They do this because they don't want anyone to see them and they want people to think that the King is in his bedroom.

10. Who else is riding to Zenda? Which way do they go at the fork in the road? Which way do Sapt and Rassendyll go?

Duke Michael and his servant Max Holt are riding to Zenda. They decide to go to the castle. Sapt and Rassendyll go to the hunting lodge.

11. What do you think the message "all is well" means?

Answers may vary. It probably means that the King is captured, as that is what the Duke was planning, but there may be other details that are also "well".

12. What do Sapt and Rassendyll find inside the lodge?

Johann's mother and the King are gone. Josef is killed.

13. What does Sapt want Rassendyll to do?

He wants him to continue to pretend to be the King.

**Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:**

1. It is Marshal Strakencz's idea for the King to ride through the old part of town alone.

The Marshal wants the King to ride through the old part, but not alone. (He hesitates to obey the order to make his men go ahead.)

2. Rassendyll decides to really act like a king. (Prince)

3. All the people smile and cheer the King. (Some are quiet and look at "the King" angrily.)

4. Antoinette says that Rudolf looks different but she thinks he is the real King. (The princess)

5. Fritz thinks it is a good idea for Rassendyll "the King" to become popular with the people.

(He thinks Michael won't like it.)

6. Sapt tells Fritz that he may let Michael into the King's bedroom.

(he must keep Michael out, even if he has to be killed doing it/even if his life depends on it)

7. Sapt and Rassendyll go out of the palace through the front door. (a secret door)

8. Sapt and Rassendyll are planning to set a trap at the hunting lodge.

(They're planning to just take the King.)

9. They find Josef and Johann's mother killed in the cellar.

(They find Josef killed, but Johann's mother has escaped.)

10. Sapt wants Rassendyll to leave Ruritania immediately.

(He wants him to continue to pretend to be the King.)

Answer the following questions:

1) Why was Sapt anxious when Rassendyll rode through the old part of town alone

2) How did Rassendyll and Sapt get a permit to leave the city

3) According to Flavia, how has Rassendyll (the King) changed in his appearance?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1) Rassendyll was worried when the French prince asked him a question which he could not answer.

2) Rassendyll found the dead body of the King in the hunting lodge cellar.

3) Rassendyll and Josef rode from Strelsau to the hunting lodge to get the King.

4) Sapt finds the body of Josef.

5) The Duke and Max took the road to Zenda and the hunting lodge.

6) Fritz wants to worry Duke Michael some more.

7) Sapt and Rassendyll hear coaches coming behind them.

8) Rassendyll rides through the poor part of town without a close neighbour.

9) Rassendyll rides in a horse with the Princess.

10) Sapt and Rassendyll find torn and dirty gloves on the ground.

Read the quotations and answer the questions.

"Tell your soldiers to ride ahead of me. I don't need them or you. You can wait here until I've continued through the old town alone."

1. Who says this to whom?

Rassendyll says this to Marshal Strakencz.

2. Where are they and when is this?

They are in the streets of Strelsau, going from the station to the coronation. This is before the coronation.

3. Why does the speaker say this?

He wants to act as a king. He wants the people to know that he trusts them.

"You mustn't try too hard. I'm not sure it was a good idea to ride alone through the old town. Duke Michael won't like it if you become too popular with his people, you know."

1. Who says this to whom?

Fritz says this to Rassendyll.

2. Where and when is this said?

They are in the King's bedroom after the coronation.

3. Why did the person ride alone through the old town and why won't Duke Michael like it if the person becomes too popular?

Rassendyll wanted to act like a real king and show that he wasn't afraid of the people/show that he trusted the people. Duke Michael won't like it because if he tries to become King, the people will probably support him. But if the King/Rassendyll becomes popular, it will be harder for Michael to get the support of the people.

"If all's well, why go there? And if all isn't well, I fear there'll be a trap."

1. Who says this to whom?

Max Holt says this to Duke Michael.

2. Where are they?

They are on the road between Strelsau and Zenda./On the way to Zenda.

3. What is "there"? What do you think he means by "all's well"?

"There" means the hunting lodge. "All's well" probably means that the Duke's plan has gone ahead and that the King is kidnapped. (Student's ideas may vary.)

**“We’ll go back to Strelsau. The King will be back in the capital again tomorrow!”**

**1. Who says this to whom?**

**Sapt says this to Rassendyll.**

**2. Where are they and what has happened?**

**They are in the hunting lodge near Zenda. They have found Josef dead and the King is gone.**

**3. How will the King be back in the capital tomorrow?**

**Rassendyll will continue to pretend to be the King. / Sapt wants Rassendyll to continue to pretend to be the King.**

**Read the quotation, then answer the questions:**

**“I heard that you rode through the old town alone. That surprised me. The people there must really have appreciated what you did.”**

**1) Who said this?**

**2) To whom was it said?**

**3) Why did the people appreciate this action?**

**Read the quotation, then answer the questions:**

**1) "Tell your soldiers to ride ahead of me. I don't need them or you."**

***Rassendyll to Marshal Strakencz.***

**2) "You look different today? You look more tired and serious, and I think you're thinner. I can't believe that you really have changed today."**

***Princess Flavia to Rassendyll.***

**3) "You will tell everyone that the King's gone to bed and that he's not to be woken by anybody until nine o'clock tomorrow morning."**

***Sapt to Fritz.***

**4) "You may need it to get through the city gates. They'll all be closed at this time of day."**

***Sapt to Rassendyll.***

**5) "If all's well, why go there? And if all isn't well, I fear there'll be a trap."**

***Max Holf to Duke Michael.***

**6) "They came here to kidnap the King and they found him in that room in the cellar. If we hadn't escaped to Strelsau, we would've been killed."**

***Sapt to Rassendyll.***

**7) "We'll go back to Strelsau. The King will be back in the capital again tomorrow!"**

***Sapt to Rassendyll.***

## **CHAPTER FOUR**

### **Summary:**

Sapt suggested returning to Strelsau and Rassendyll continue pretending to be the King. Rassendyll thought it was dangerous. Rassendyll thought that the Duke and the Six men knew he wasn't the real King. Sapt told him they couldn't say anything without showing their guilt (kidnapping the King and killing Josef). Rassendyll was afraid that someone or the Princess would realise him. Sapt told him it was a risk but they had to do it or Michael would take the crown. He added that if the real King was dead, Rassendyll should stay King. Yet, he thought the real King was still alive. They decided to go to Strelsau before being caught. They saw eight or nine of Michael's men on horses with spades coming to hide their evil work (killing Josef). Sapt and Rassendyll decided to kill some of them to take revenge to Josef. They killed two of the men. Rassendyll was about to be trapped when he and Sapt escaped. One of the men saw Rassendyll and thought he was the King. Rassendyll was shot in his finger. When they were back at the palace, Sapt told his servant, Freyler, that the King went horse riding and he shouldn't tell anyone about that as he thought it's better not to trust even the best of men. They went inside the palace from the secret door. Fritz thought that Rassendyll was the King. So Sapt thought their plan could succeed. Sapt asked Rassendyll to go into bed and cover himself when there was a knock at the door. It was a servant of Princess Flavia. She sent him to find out how the King was after the coronation. Sapt told Rassendyll about the King's duties. Rassendyll found the king's life hard. Rassendyll asked a new servant for a drink. Fritz suggested attacking Michael. Sapt thought the Duke can't kill the King as Rassendyll would stay King. Fritz noticed that only half of the Duke's Six men were in Strelsau. Sapt thought the other three were in Zenda, guarding the King. Rassendyll asked about the Six men. Fritz told him they are six special soldiers who stay in Michael's house at all times. They are loyal to him.

Three are from Ruritania, one is Belgian, Bersonin, a French one, De Gautet and an English one, Detchard. Rassendyll decided to keep some secrets from the people he could trust the most (Sapt and Fritz). He decided to be popular to stop the poor from thinking badly about him. He rode his horse and waved to people who bowed to him. One day, he stopped to buy flowers from a poor young girl with a gold coin to attract the people's interest. He rode his horse to Flavia's home because she was popular and he would have her support. She told him that he had changed since he became King. He talked with her about Michael and he needed his support. At that moment, Michael went to Flavia's house. Michael didn't come into the room. Flavia told Rassendyll, the King, that Michael would be angry as he hadn't asked him to come in. No one could enter without the King's permission. Rassendyll realised his mistake and went to greet Michael and showed him into the Princess's guest room. When Michael asked Rassendyll about the injury, Rassendyll said an animal bit him. Rassendyll thanked Michael for the splendid coronation. Michael introduced his three men to Rassendyll. He spoke to Detchard, the English, in English with a pretend foreign accent, and he saw him smile when he spoke. So, Detchard knew his secret. And if he knew surely all the Six Men knew. Rassendyll, the King was worried about his safety.

Answer the following questions:

1. What does Sapt plan to do if the real King is dead?

He plans that Rassendyll will remain as King.

2. Why do Michael's men have spades? What does it mean that they were going to "hide their evil work"?

They are going to bury Josef's body so no one will know about his murder.

3. What does Rassendyll mean that some of those evil men should join Josef?

Rassendyll means that some of them should be killed. They should join Josef in death.

4. Why does Sapt say to the servant at the secret door "All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?"

He wants the servant to think that the King was just out riding for fun. He doesn't want him to know anything about where they were. Sapt says it's best not to trust people too much.

5. Why does Rassendyll use a new servant who has never met the real King? Who is the servant replacing?

The new servant would be less likely to realise that Rassendyll is not the real King.

The servant is replacing Josef, who was killed by Michael's men.

6. Who are the Six Men? Where are they from? Why are only three in Strelsau?

They are six special soldiers that Duke Michael keeps in his house all the time. Three are from Ruritania, one is French, one is Belgian, one is English. Sapt and Fritz assume that if only three are in Strelsau, the other three must be guarding the King.

7. Rassendyll decides to keep some of his plans secret from Sapt and Fritz. What are those plans?

He plans to make himself as popular as he can, and to not say anything bad about Michael. This way, if there were a fight, some of the people would support him (the King) and not Michael. Michael would not become stronger this way.

8. Why does he visit the Princess? What does he do on the way? How do these things make him more popular?

He wants to get the support of the Princess (for the King). On the way he buys some flowers from a poor girl and pays with a gold coin. Giving the coin makes him look generous to the people. The people like the Princess and seem to want the King to marry her, so visiting her will make the people happy.

9. Why can't Michael come into the room when the King is there? What mistake does Rassendyll make? How does he cover up his mistake?

Michael can't come into the room without the King's permission (because the King is royal and higher than Michael). Rassendyll does not know this rule, and he makes the mistake of asking why Michael will be angry (that he isn't asked to enter the room). He covers his mistake by saying that he keeps forgetting all the rules.

10. Rassendyll says that his hand was hurt from an animal bite and that he's waiting to see if the bite is poisonous. He also says that he is sure the animal will try to bite again. Who is he really talking about, and who understands this?

He is really talking about Michael (his poisoning and kidnapping of the King, and his men's shooting at Rassendyll), and Michael understands this.

11. How does Rassendyll know that the Six Men also know his secret?

He knows because of the way Detchard (the Englishman) smiles at him when he is presented to him. Rassendyll knows that if one of the Six Men knows, they will all know.

Answer the following questions:

- 1) Why couldn't the Duke say anything about Rassendyll even though he knew Rassendyll was not the King?
- 2) How did Sapt explain Rassendyll's injured finger to Freyler?
- 3) Why was Rassendyll keen on getting the people of Ruritania to like him more than they liked the Duke?
- 4) Why couldn't the Duke ever become King unless he married Flavia?
- 5) How did Duke Michael know that Rassendyll was not the real King?
- 6) Why did the men who came to the lodge have spades with them?
- 7) Why did Rassendyll continue to pretend to be the King after the coronation day?
- 8) Who is Detchard?

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1. The Duke's men come to the hunting lodge to kill Sapt and Rassendyll. (bury Josef's body)
2. One of Michael's men thinks that Rassendyll is the Duke. (King)
3. Sapt thinks at first that the real King has returned. (Fritz)
4. Rassendyll finds the work of being a King easy. (difficult)
5. Rassendyll wants to hurry and make plans to attack Michael. (Fritz)
6. Rassendyll tells all of his plans to Sapt and Fritz. (keeps some things from)
7. Rassendyll wants to make Michael angry by not asking him to enter the room. (He doesn't know that Michael can't enter without his permission.)
8. Rassendyll's hand is hurt because he was bitten by an animal. (shot in the hand, but he tells the Princess that he was bitten.)
9. Rassendyll meets the Six Men at Flavia's palace. (meets only three of)
10. Rassendyll realises that Michael's Six Men also know that he is the real King. (is not)

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

- 1) Freyler was Sapt's farmer.
- 2) Fritz and Rassendyll rode to the palace to see Madame Antoinette.
- 3) "King" Rassendyll meets all of the Six Men at the Princess's.
- 4) Rassendyll refused to continue to pretend to be the King.
- 5) Fritz saw Rassendyll and mistook him for Sapt.
- 6) "King" Rassendyll meets the English ambassador and couldn't answer his question.
- 7) At Flavia's palace, Rassendyll warned Michael not to sting again.

Read the quotations and answer the questions.

"You're mad! The plan's too dangerous!"

1. Who says this to whom?

Rassendyll says this to Colonel Sapt.

2. Where are they?

They are at the hunting lodge near Zenda.

3. What is the dangerous plan?

Sapt wants Rassendyll to continue to pretend to be the King and to return to Strelsau that night.

"We've got them! They can't say anything without showing their guilt."

1. Who says this to whom?

Sapt says this to Rassendyll.

2. Why does he say this?

He is trying to persuade Rassendyll to continue to be the King.

3. Who is "them"? What does the speaker mean by "We've got them"?

"Them" is Duke Michael and his men. The speaker means that they have trapped the Duke and his men. The Duke can't say anything against Rassendyll because he would have to admit that he is guilty of kidnapping the real King.

"Now remember, say nothing about this. All young men like to ride their horses now and then, so why not the King?"

1. Who says this to whom?

Sapt says this to (Freyler,) the servant waiting for them outside the secret door to the palace.

2. Where is the speaker coming from and who is with him?

He was coming from Zenda and Rassendyll (disguised as the King) was with him.

3. Why does the speaker say this?

He doesn't want the servant to talk about the King's going out. He wants him to think that the King was just out riding (and enjoying himself).

Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

"You do know that Michael will be very angry. Is that a good idea?"

1) Who said this?

2) To whom was it said?

3) What was it that would make Michael very angry?

"Brother, I'm so sorry. I didn't know you were waiting, otherwise I'd have asked you in sooner."

1. Where were they when Rassendyll said this to Michael?

2. Why didn't Michael go into the room before he was asked?

3. Why didn't Rassendyll ask him to come into the room sooner?

Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

1) "Tell your soldiers to ride ahead of me. I don't need them or you."

*Rassendyll to Marshal Strakencz.*

2) "You look different today? You look more tired and serious, and I think you're thinner. I can't believe that you really have changed today."

*Princess Flavia to Rassendyll.*

3) "You will tell everyone that the King's gone to bed and that he's not to be woken by anybody until nine o'clock tomorrow morning."

*Sapt to Fritz.*

4) "You may need it to get through the city gates. They'll all be closed at this time of day."

*Sapt to Rassendyll.*

5) "If all's well, why go there? And if all isn't well, I fear there'll be a trap."

*Max Holf to Duke Michael.*

6) "They came here to kidnap the King and they found him in that room in the cellar. If we hadn't escaped to Strelsau, we would've been killed."

*Sapt to Rassendyll.*

7) "We'll go back to Strelsau. The King will be back in the capital again tomorrow!"

*Sapt to Rassendyll.*

## CHAPTER FIVE

### Summary:

Princess Flavia asked Rudolf to be careful. He remembered Rose's words about Robert's responsibilities. No one noticed he wasn't the real king because he looked like the king. He learnt a lot about how to run a country. He was good at pretending he had forgotten rules. One day Sapt handed him a letter and told him that they knew the king was at the Castle of Zenda. Three of the Six men (Lauengram, Krafstein and Rupert Hentzau) are always at the castle and the drawbridge is always kept up. Rassendyll wanted to go to Zenda but Sapt told him he would stay there forever if he did. Rassendyll was followed by six people (whom Sapt ordered to follow him) wherever he went because Michael's men wanted to catch him. Rassendyll read the letter Sapt gave him. It was from Antoinette De Mauban. She asked him to go to the summer house and she would tell him something important. Sapt thought Michael wrote the letter. Sapt said that she had a great argument with Michael. Rassendyll decided to go to her or he would go back to England. Sapt and Rassendyll went to the summer house. Sapt waited outside. When Rassendyll went inside the house, Antoinette asked him to shut the door. She told him that she wrote the letter at the Duke's orders. She told him the Duke planned to kill him and arrest Sapt and Fritz for killing him. Then the real king will be murdered and the Duke will become King. She asked him to leave quickly but it was late. Michael's men were outside. Detchard offered him a safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds. He held the iron table by the legs so it was in front of him. He pretended to accept the offer and asked Michael's men to open the door for him as it opened outwards. As soon as Detchard opened the door, Rassendyll ran at him as fast as he could holding the table in front of him. The table top protected him from their fire and hit them and they fell down. He ran away firing his gun behind him. He climbed over the wall. They rode back to the palace. The next day Sapt read Rassendyll the Chief of the Police report: the people thought that if the King and the princess were not married, it would be better to marry the Duke. Sapt prepared for a ball and

asked Rassendyll to ask the princess to marry him. Rassendyll thought it wouldn't be fair for the princess. Rassendyll told Flavia that when he was younger, he needn't worry about society. He thought that was someone else's job (he made a mistake). He decided to tell Flavia the truth when Sapt came and told him there was someone who wanted to see him. The next day Rassendyll told Sapt they must rescue the King. Rassendyll visited Flavia. She received two letters. One was from Michael who invited her to visit Zenda. The other was from Antoinette. She asked Flavia not to accept Michael's invitation and asked her to show the letter to *the leader of Ruritania*. Rassendyll asked her to say she was ill. Rassendyll visited Marshal Strakencz and asked him to guard the princess and not to allow the Duke's men to visit her. He would send him a message every evening. If he didn't get a message for three days, he had the authority to say that he was the head of Strelsau. He must then ask the Duke to allow him to see the King. If he doesn't allow him to see the King in twenty-four hours, he must say that the King's dead. Then he must tell the people of Ruritania who their new ruler will be (Princess Flavia).

### COMPREHENSION QUESTIONS

#### A. Answer these questions:

1. Rassendyll has never liked responsibilities. Now he has many. What responsibilities does he have?

*He has to act like the King. He has to run the country. He has to try to rescue the real King from Michael.*

2. Why does Rassendyll become good at pretending he has forgotten rules or people he has met? How does that prevent people from noticing that he is not the real King? What else do you think helps him not to be discovered?

*When he makes a mistake in pretending to be the King he has to cover it up by pretending that he has forgotten something or someone. In this way, people don't notice that he's not the real King. Other things that might help him are these: people don't expect that there is a pretend King, so they don't look for one; they see what they expect to see. He looks nearly identical to the King, so this helps. Also Sapt stays close to him to tell him what to say or do. (Students might offer other suggestions.)*

3. Sapt brings news of the real King. What is it?

*The King is at the Castle of Zenda.*

4. Why does Rassendyll want to go to Zenda? What does Sapt mean when he says "You'll probably stay there forever if you do"?

*He wants to go to rescue the real King. Sapt means that Rassendyll will either be imprisoned in Zenda or killed there if he goes.*

5. Why does Sapt have Rassendyll followed everywhere? What does he mean by "If you disappear, the game's over"?

*He has him followed to protect him from Michael's men. If they can kill or kidnap Rassendyll, they will kill the real King and make Michael the King. Rassendyll's game of pretending to be King would be over.*

6. Who writes a letter to Rassendyll and what does it say? Who does he suspect really wrote it?

*Antoinette de Mauban writes a letter. It tells him to come to a certain place in a summer house in a garden late at night. He suspects that Michael wrote the letter (or at least dictated it to her).*

7. When Rassendyll talks to Detchard at the summer house, what does Detchard offer him? Why doesn't Rassendyll accept it?

*Detchard offers to give Rassendyll 50,000 English pounds and a safe journey to the border. Rassendyll doesn't accept this because he knows that they will kill the real King, and he doesn't trust them. They will promise him one thing but kill him instead.*

8. How does Rassendyll come out of the summer house alive?

*He holds the iron table in front of him to protect him (like a shield) and he rushes out of the door and knocks the three men down. He runs quickly away.*

9. Why have they prepared a ball for the Princess?

*They want to make the people happy and make them think that the King wants to marry the Princess. They want Rassendyll to ask the Princess to marry him. Some people think that if the King doesn't marry her soon, she should marry Duke Michael.*

10. Rassendyll tells the Princess that when he was younger, he thought he didn't need to worry about society. Why does he say this? How does the Princess react? Why is it a mistake for him to say this?

*He says it because he is forgetting to act like the King. He is thinking that he is himself, Rassendyll. The Princess is surprised because the King must have always known that he was going to become the King one day. This is a mistake by Rassendyll because he almost uncovers the truth about who he is.*

11. The day after the ball, the Princess receives two letters. What are they and who are they from? *One is an invitation from Michael for her to visit him in Zenda. The other is a warning not to accept any invitations from Michael and not to go anywhere without many guards. It is from Antoinette de Mauban (although the Princess doesn't know this).*

12. What does Rassendyll do when he hears of these letters? Who does he go to? *He orders a guard for the Princess. He goes to Marshal Strakencz and gives him some orders.*

13. What does Rassendyll tell Marshal Strakencz to do? *He tells him to guard the Princess and not allow Michael or his men to visit her. He also tells the Marshal that he is leaving Strelsau for a few days and he will send a message to him every evening. If he doesn't get a message for three days, he has the authority to say that he is now the head of Strelsau. He must then ask the Duke to allow him to see the King. If he doesn't see the King in twenty-four hours, he must say that the King's dead. Then he must tell the people of Ruritania that their new ruler will be Princess Flavia.*

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1. Rassendyll is sad to say goodbye to Duke Michael and his men. (*is not sorry*)
2. No one goes into the castle without Detchard or Michael's permission. (*Rupert*)
3. The letter tells the King to come to the summer house with a friend. (*alone*)
4. Rassendyll tells Sapt he can come but he must wait outside the summer house. (*the gate to the garden*)
5. Michael plans to reward Rassendyll, arrest Sapt and Fritz, and kill the real King. (*kill*)
6. Rassendyll runs out of the door holding a door to protect himself. (*table*)
7. Detchard is wounded in the leg by Rassendyll's bullet. (*arm*)
8. At the ball, Rassendyll tells the Princess that he is not the real King. (*He is about to tell her, but Sapt interrupts him to stop him.*)
9. Duke Michael invites the Princess to visit him in Zenda and she accepts. (*but the other letter and Rassendyll tell her not to accept the invitation.*)
10. Strakencz is ordered to immediately become the head of Strelsau. (*If he doesn't receive a message from the King for three days, he must say he is the head of Strelsau.*)

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

- (1) Rassendyll shoots Rupert while escaping from the summer house.
- (2) Antoinette tells Rassendyll Rupert's plan.
- (3) Rassendyll receives two letters from Antoinette de Mauban asking him to go to the summer house.
- (4) The Duke of Strelsau leaves the capital to Strelsau.
- (5) A birthday party is held for the Princess.
- (6) Rassendyll nearly tells the Countess who he really is.
- (7) Princess Flavia receives an invitation from Antoinette de Mauban.
- (8) Rassendyll orders the Marshal to punish the Princess.
- (9) Rassendyll tells the Marshal he is leaving Zenda.

Read this quotation and answer the questions:

"It would be very useful for Michael if you disappeared. And if you disappear, the game's over."

1. Who says this to whom?

*Sapt says this to Rassendyll.*

2. Why does the speaker say this?

*Because Rassendyll complained that there are always men following him. (The men were ordered by Sapt to do so.)*

3. What game would be over if the person disappeared? Explain.

*The game of who is King. Michael would also kill the real King and then make himself King.*

*"I also have a game to play. I'll tell the Duke's men that you never came. If the Duke doesn't find out what I've done, we may meet again."*

1. Who says this to whom?

*Antoinette de Mauban says this to Rassendyll.*

2. Where are they?

*They are in a summer house in a garden in Strelsau.*

3. What has the speaker done that the Duke shouldn't find out?

*She has warned Rassendyll that they are trying to kill him, and has told him how to escape.*

*"But you always knew that you would become King. How could you think that was someone else's job?"*

1. Who says this to whom?

*Princess Flavia says this to "King" Rassendyll.*

2. Where are they?

*They are at the ball in the palace.*

3. This was said in reaction to the other person's words. What did the other person say before this?

*He said that when he was younger he didn't think he had any responsibilities to society.*

*"Every evening, I'll send you a message. If you don't get a message for three days, you have the authority to say that you are now the head of Strelsau."*

1. Who says this to whom?

*"King" Rassendyll says this to Marshal Strakencz.*

2. When is this said?

*This is said the day after the ball, before Rassendyll goes to Zenda. / After the Duke invites the Princess to Zenda and Antoinette warns her to stay away.*

3. What other orders does the speaker give?

*The Marshal must guard the Princess and not let Michael or his men near her. If the Marshal becomes the head of Strelsau, he must then go to the Duke and demand to see the King. If he doesn't see the King in twenty-four hours, he must tell the people that the King is dead and make Princess Flavia the new ruler of Ruritania.*

*"You do not know me, but I do not want you to fall into the power of the Duke."*

1. Who wrote these words in a letter?

*Antoinette de Mauban wrote these words.*

2. Who was the letter addressed to?

*The letter was addressed to Princess Flavia.*

3. What advice did the letter give?

*The letter said that she should not accept any invitation from Duke Michael and that she should not go anywhere without many guards.*

Read this quotation and answer the questions:

1) "Why is it that wherever I go in the capital, I'm followed by six people?"

*Rassendyll to Sapt.*

2) "It would be very useful for Michael if you disappeared. And if you disappear, the game's over."

*Sapt to Rassendyll.*

3) "Every day we leave the King imprisoned there's more danger. We must move quickly."

*Rassendyll to Sapt.*

4) "The plan is to kill you and to take your body into the old town."

*Antoinette to Rassendyll.*

5) "We can offer you a safe journey to the border and fifty thousand English pounds."

*Detchard to Rassendyll.*

6) "You know, someone once said to me, 'a person who has a position in society has responsibilities. Recently I've realised how true this is.'"

*Rassendyll to Flavia.*

7) "When I was younger, I didn't think I needed to worry about society. I thought that was someone else's job."

*Rassendyll to Flavia.*

8) "But you always knew that you would become King. How could you think that was someone else's job?"

*Flavia to Rassendyll.*

9) "Why does it say 'the leader' and not 'the King'?"

*Flavia to Rassendyll.*

10) "Today you must say you're ill so you can't go to Zenda."

*Rassendyll to Flavia.*

11) "If you don't get a message for three days, you have the authority to say that you are now the head of Strelsau."

*Rassendyll to Marshal Strakencz.*

12) "Then you must tell the people of Ruritania who their new ruler will be."

*Rassendyll to Marshal Strakencz.*

## CHAPTER SIX

### **Summary:**

Rassendyll asked the Marshal to protect the princess. Then he went to Flavia and told her that he was going hunting. He will hunt Michael. She thought it was dangerous. He asked her to be queen if he didn't come back. She told him she would do the right for Ruritania. Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll went to stay at Tarlenheim (a modern country house belonged to Fritz's relative who agreed happily to use it for a hunting trip). They went with a group of servants and ten brave and strong men. The men's job was to free a friend of the king who was held prisoner in the castle of Zenda. After an hour, Lauengram, Krafstein and Rupert Hentzau visited them. Rupert told them that the Duke was sorry they didn't stay in his mansion. Yet, it was best because the Duke and many of his servants had a dangerous illness. Rassendyll asked Rupert about Detchard's injury and asked him to eat with them. When they left, Sapt told Rassendyll that Rupert was the worst criminal. Rassendyll and Fritz set off for Zenda. They went to the inn (that Rassendyll stayed at when he first arrived) and asked to have a meal. When the owner's daughter brought them the food, Rassendyll uncovered his face. She recognised him and was afraid. Rassendyll asked her to ask Johann to meet her at ten o'clock and take him to Tarlenheim. When they returned, Sapt told them that one of their men, Bernenstein, was shot and stayed in bed with a bullet in his arm. The next day, Rupert visited them. He told Rassendyll they knew who he was. Rassendyll told him they couldn't say that in public because people would know they kidnapped the real king. Rupert told him that the Duke offered him a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces which Rassendyll refused. Rupert asked to shake hands and took Rassendyll aback. He stabbed him in the shoulder with his knife and rode off fast. Fritz told Rassendyll that Johann was there and he was happy. If Michael's plan succeeded, Johann will be in trouble because he knew too much. Rassendyll thought that with the right encouragement, Johann would make the perfect spy. Johann worked with Michael because he was afraid of him and told Rassendyll his secrets. He said that there were two small rooms (cut into the rock) inside the castle (one behind another), which you could only reach by crossing the drawbridge. The King was kept in chains in the second room. A large stone pipe led down to the castle moat. The first room was always guarded by three of the Six Men. They were told that, if some people attacked the first room, Detchard should go into the other room and kill the King. The body would be put down the pipe and the weight of his chains would keep the body under water. Calling out to the other men, Detchard would then escape down the same pipe and swim across the moat. The other two men would then follow him and the Duke's horses would take them to safety. So anyone searching the castle would find nothing: just an empty room. If many men attacked the castle, they would do the same thing, but one of the Six Men would take the King's place. So when Michael arrived at the castle, he could say that he was keeping one of the Six Men as prisoner because he'd been rude to Antoinette de Mauban. No one would believe that the King was ever there. Sapt thought that the king would be dead before they could save him whatever they did. He told Rassendyll he would stay king for a long time. Rassendyll thought there were two ways to save the king. One is if they have a miracle, and the other is if one of the Duke's men betrays him.

### **COMPREHENSION QUESTIONS**

#### **A. Answer these questions:**

1. Rassendyll's writing is different from the King's. What reason does Rassendyll give? Why might this difference be a problem for Marshal Strakencz?

*Rassendyll says it is because of his injured finger. It might be a problem for Strakencz because people might think the order from the King is not a real one.*

2. What reason does Rassendyll give Princess Flavia for leaving Strelsau? What does he ask her to do if he doesn't come back?

*He tells her he is going to hunt a big animal — Michael. He tells her she must become Queen if he doesn't return.*

3. Where do Rassendyll and his men stay for their hunting trip? Where is it and who does it belong to?

*They stay in a country house called Tarlenheim. It belongs to a relative of Fritz. It is on a hill on the opposite side of the town of Zenda from the castle.*

4. What reason does Duke Michael give for not visiting "King" Rassendyll or inviting him to his castle?

*He says that he and some servants have a serious sickness. (It is not true.)*

5. Why do Rassendyll and Fritz go to the inn at Zenda? Who do they talk to there and what do they say?

*They go to meet Johann (or someone who can contact him). They talk to the innkeeper's daughter and ask her to have Johann meet them the next night.*

6. What happens to Bernenstein while Fritz and Rassendyll are out?

*He is shot in the arm while he is out in the woods.*

7. What message does Rupert Hentzau bring the next day? How does Rassendyll reply? What happens when Rupert is leaving?

*The Duke offers Rassendyll a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces. Rassendyll refuses. As Rupert is leaving, he stabs Rassendyll in the shoulder with a knife.*

8. What do they learn from Johann?

*They learn where the King is being kept in the castle and the Duke's plans.*

9. Describe the room and the pipe where the real King is being kept.

*There is an outer room with no windows. It is always guarded by three of the Six Men. The King is kept in chains in the next room. Its window has a large pipe that leads to the castle moat.*

10. What is the plan if they are attacked? How will they kill the King and what will they do with the body?

*They will kill the King and then put him into the pipe. The chains will keep the body under the water of the moat. The guards can then go out the same pipe and swim across the moat to escape.*

11. Why do they send Johann back to the castle?

*The Duke would look for him if he were missing. They also hope they can trust him and get more information from him.*

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1. Rudolf the fifth cannot legally become King unless he marries Princess Flavia. (Duke Michael)

2. Rassendyll's writing is the same as the real King's writing. (different from)

3. Fritz owns the country house called Tarlenheim. (Fritz's relative)

4. The ten brave and strong gentlemen know that Rassendyll is not the real King.

*(They think he is. They know that Michael tried to kill the King (Rassendyll) and that a friend of the King is a prisoner in the castle.)*

5. Duke Michael visits Rassendyll at Tarlenheim. (sends three of the Six Men to visit and apologize.)

6. The innkeeper's daughter says that she didn't think Rassendyll was the King when he stayed with them. (thought)

7. Johann works for the Duke because he loves him. (is afraid of him)

8. If the Duke kills the King, he will put the body into the streets of the city with chains on it. (moat)

9. The Castle of Zenda is a happy place. (No one feels safe there because they're all criminals (except the King).)

10. Rassendyll thinks it will be easy to rescue the King.

*(difficult. It will need a miracle or betrayal by one of the Duke's men.)*

Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

(1) Sapt writes some orders for Marshal Strakencz.

(2) Rassendyll tells Princess Flavia that he is going running.

(3) Fritz and Rassendyll went to the inn to meet the innkeeper's daughter.

(4) The Ruritanian Six Men visit Rassendyll at Tarlenheim.

(5) Bernenstein is shot in the shoulder while in the woods.

(6) Rassendyll, Sapt, Fritz and seven gentlemen go to Tarlenheim.

(7) Rupert Hentzau comes with an offer from Rassendyll.

(8) Rupert Hentzau strikes Rassendyll.

(9) Rassendyll meets with Detchard.

(10) Johann tells them the Duke's plans for Rassendyll.

Read the quotations and answer the questions.

*"The writing's a little different from your usual. I hope people know it's a real order from the King."*

1. Who says this to Rassendyll (the King)?

*Marshal Strakencz says this.*

2. What does he think is the reason that the handwriting is different? What is the real reason?

*He thinks it is different because the King has injured his hand. The real reason is that Rassendyll is not the real King.*

3. Why is it important that the handwriting be the same?

*So that people will know that it is a real order from the King.*

**“So you’d prefer to hunt animals than do your duties in the capital?”**

1. Who says this to Rassendyll?

*Princess Flavia.*

2. When does the person say this?

*The day after the ball, when Rassendyll is saying goodbye to go to Zenda to hunt Michael.*

3. What “animal” is Rassendyll going to hunt?

*Duke Michael.*

**“If you do not know how to address the King, my brother must find another messenger.”**

1. Who does Rassendyll say this to?

*Rassendyll says this to Rupert Hentzau.*

2. Where are they?

*They are at Tarlenheim.*

3. Why does he say this?

*He says this because Hentzau has addressed him as “Rassendyll”.*

**“Rassendyll, I think that this time next year, you’ll still be King.”**

1. Who says this?

*Colonel Sapt.*

2. What has he just heard?

*He has just heard the Duke’s plan for killing the King and hiding the body.*

3. Why does he think Rassendyll will still be King after a year?

*Because the Duke’s plan is very clever and he will kill the King whether he is attacked by a small group or a large one.*

Read the quotations and answer the questions.

1) “You must promise that you’ll protect Princess Flavia from the Duke,”

*Rassendyll to the Marshal*

2) “As you know, his mother was not royal and he can only legally become King if he marries the Princess.”

*Rassendyll to the Marshal*

3) “The writing’s a little different from your usual. I hope people know it’s a real order from the King.”

*The Marshal to Rassendyll (the King)*

4) “So you’d prefer to hunt animals than do your duties in the capital?”

*Flavia to Rassendyll (the King)*

5) “The thing I hunt is a very big animal.”

*Rassendyll to Flavia*

6) “I don’t really know what’s going on, but I’ll do whatever is right for Ruritania. If that means becoming the Queen, then so be it.”

*Flavia to Rassendyll (the King)*

7) “I’m sorry if we said anything bad when you stayed with us.”

*The daughter of the inn keeper to Rassendyll (the King)*

8) “Tell him to meet you tomorrow night at ten o’clock, then bring him to our house.”

*Rassendyll (the King) to the inn keeper’s daughter*

9) “If you do not know how to address the King, my brother must find another messenger.”

*Rassendyll to Rupert Hentzau*

10) “He offers you a safe journey to the border and a million gold pieces.”

*Rupert Hentzau to Rassendyll*

11) “What if many men attacked the castle?”

*Rassendyll (the King) to Johann*

12) “It means that if we attack the castle quietly and secretly, or openly with a great army, the King will still be dead before we can save him.”

### **Sapt to Rassendyll**

13) "We can help you if you keep your promises, otherwise you'll never be safe again."

### **Rassendyll (the King) to Johann**

14) "There are two ways in which the King can come out of Zenda alive."

### **Rassendyll to Sapt**

## **CHAPTER SEVEN**

### **Summary:**

Three pieces of news arrived at Tarlenheim. The people of Strelsau were worried when they heard that the king was injured while hunting. The Duke believed that Rassendyll's injury was bad. Princess Flavia hears that the King is ill and visits him in Tarlenheim. Rassendyll, Sapt, Fritz and seven men set out to the Castle of Zenda. Rassendyll swims across the moat to the wall of the castle. He examines the pipe to know if there is any way to get into the castle. Rassendyll kills Max Hoff, Johann's brother, while he is asleep. He also hears the King's voice but unable to get to the King. The place is heavily guarded. Rassendyll confronts Rupert Hentzau but he escapes. Three of Rassendyll's men are killed in the fight. Lauengram and Crafstein are killed. The Chief of Police of Ruritania informs the King that an Englishman Rudolf Rassendyll is missing. This makes matters more complicated. The situation is more dangerous for Rassendyll. He orders the Chief of police to return to Strelsau at once. Rupert and Rassendyll have a serious discussion. Rassendyll offers to pardon him if he helps to save the King. Rupert wants Rassendyll to order his men to attack the castle. He wishes for Rassendyll's men and Michael to die. So, he will be rich and powerful. Rassendyll receives a message from Antoinette. She asks Rassendyll to rescue her from the castle in return for her favour. Rassendyll faces several problems. The people of Ruritania are questioning his stay in Zenda. The police are looking for Rudolf Rassendyll. There is a demand for a date for the royal wedding. Johann brings more news of what is going on in the castle. The King's condition is getting worse. A doctor is attending to him. Rassendyll finds out more about the locations of the rooms in the castle. Rassendyll lays out a plan to save the King. He is desperate. The plan is set and the men take their position at the Zenda Castle. Rassendyll swims across the moat and waits near the drawbridge. De Gautet and Rupert cross the drawbridge to go back to the castle. Rupert gets into the moat and swims towards the direction of the mansion.

### **COMPREHENSION QUESTIONS**

#### **A. Answer these questions.**

1. What three pieces of news arrive at Tarlenheim the next day?

*The people of Strelsau heard that the King was badly injured while hunting. The Duke thought he was badly injured. The Princess ordered Marshall Strakencz to take her to Tarlenheim to see the King.*

2. Why do Rassendyll and the others go to the castle at night?

*They want to see it so that they can make plans to rescue the King.*

3. Why does Rassendyll kill Max Holf?

*He is guarding the King's prison. Rassendyll kills him because this is a war for the King's life and Max is working for the enemy.*

4. Why do the seven gentlemen go with Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz to the castle? What do they do?

*They go to protect the horses and the others in case the Duke's men attack. They fight with the Duke's men (and three of them are killed).*

5. Who gets killed in the fight in the woods? Who gets away?

*Two of the Duke's Six Men get killed, Lauengram and Kafstein. Three of Rassendyll's men get killed also. Rupert Hentzau escapes.*

6. Why were Rassendyll's bags found at a train station near Zenda? Why is the Chief of Police looking for Mr Rassendyll?

*Rassendyll had sent the bags ahead to the station on the morning of the day he met the King in the woods. He never went to the station to get them because he was pretending to be the King. The Chief of Police is looking for Rassendyll because he has disappeared. (His family has not heard from him.)*

7. Rassendyll meets Rupert the next day while they are out riding. What plan does Rupert offer to Rassendyll?

*He offers to help him attack the castle. But Sapt, Fritz, Michael and the King must all die. Then Rassendyll can stay as King and Rupert will be given a reward (money).*

8. Why is Antoinette de Mauban being kept as a prisoner of the Duke?

*He discovered that she helped Rassendyll in the summer house. He cannot trust her now.*

9. A doctor has been brought to see the real King in his prison. Why doesn't Duke Michael let the doctor leave?

*Because the doctor would tell people that the King is a prisoner.*

10. Why does Rassendyll ask Antoinette de Mauban to cry out for help at two o'clock in the morning?

*So the Duke will go to help her. At the same time Johann will open the front door to let in Sapt and Fritz with their men.*

11. Why does Rupert Hentzau swim across the moat to go back to the mansion? Why doesn't he use the drawbridge?

*The drawbridge has been pulled up for the night. He is doing something secret, so he does not use the bridge.*

**Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:**

1. The Duke thinks that Rassendyll was injured while hunting. (*He knows that Rupert injured him.*)

2. Max Holf sees Rassendyll near the pipe. (*is asleep in the boat and doesn't see him.*)

3. One of Rassendyll's men calls out, "They've got me, Rupert!" (*the Duke's*)

4. Two of Rassendyll's men are killed. (*Three*)

5. The British Ambassador reports that an Englishman has disappeared near Strelsau. (*Zenda*)

6. The Marshal does not want the Chief of Police to ask about him because he might discover the truth about the King. (*Rassendyll*)

7. Rupert offers to help rescue the King.

*(He offers to help attack the castle, but the King, Michael, Sapt and Fritz must all die.)*

8. Antoinette de Mauban asks Rassendyll to rescue her from Rupert. (*the Duke*)

9. Rassendyll tells Johann to open the front door of the mansion at Midnight. (*two in the morning.*)

**Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:**

(1) When she heard about the injury, the Princess comes to Zenda to see the King.

(2) Rassendyll kills De Gautet in the boat.

(3) Rassendyll looks at the big moat carefully.

(4) The Chief of Police asks about Mr Featherly.

(5) Rupert Hentzau refuses to help Rassendyll remain King.

(6) Madame de Mauban asks for revenge.

(7) The date of the engagement of the King and Princess is announced.

(8) Rassendyll makes a plan to kidnap the King.

(9) The house at Zenda is filled with lights and music.

**Read the quotations and answer the questions.**

"Go back to Strelsau and tell the Ambassador what you know. I'll look into this for you."

1. Who does Rassendyll say this to?

*Rassendyll says this to the Chief of Police of Strelsau.*

2. What is it that Rassendyll will look into?

*Rassendyll will look into the case of the missing Englishman Mr Rassendyll.*

3. Why doesn't he want the Chief of Police to investigate about the missing man?

*Because he might find out that Rassendyll is pretending to be the King.*

"I hear there are new servants at the castle. Do these servants know the King's a prisoner there?"

1. Who says this to Johann?

*Rassendyll says it.*

2. What does Johann answer?

*He answers that the servants do not know that the prisoner is the King.*

3. Why is that important?

*Rassendyll wants to know if the servants will think he is the King (and obey him or surrender to him when he attacks the castle).*

"He makes me angry. I nearly killed him myself last night. Think carefully about my plan."

1. Who says this to Rassendyll?

*Rupert Hentzau says this.*

2. Who is the person talking about?

*He is talking about Duke Michael.*

3. What is the person's plan?

*He will help Rassendyll attack the castle. Hentzau will decide the time. But Sapt, Fritz, Michael and the real King must all die. Then Rassendyll will remain King and Hentzau will have a reward (and escape).*

Read the quotations and answer the questions.

1) "Why doesn't my brother kill me now?"

*The King to Detchard.*

2) "Attack the castle bravely. I'll tell you when. But Fritz and Sapt must die, and so must Michael and the King."

*Rupert to Rassendyll*

3) "That will leave two men alive: you and me. You'll stay as the King, and I'll have a reward."

*Rupert to Rassendyll*

4) "He makes me angry. I nearly killed him myself last night. Think carefully about my plan."

*Rupert to Rassendyll*

5) "Tomorrow night, give this letter to Antoinette de Mauban. Then, at two o'clock in the morning, open the front door to the mansion."

*Rassendyll to Johann*

6) "I'll give you fifty thousand pieces of gold if you do what I ask you tomorrow night."

*Rassendyll to Johann*

## CHAPTER EIGHT

### Summary:

Rassendyll waits with great patience. Antoinette de Mauban calls for help an hour before the appointed time, as Rupert is in her room. Her scream draws Michael to her room. A fight breaks out between Rupert and Michael. Rupert dives into the moat to escape Michael's men. Rassendyll gets a chance to kill one of the Famous Six on guard (De Gautet). He kills another one of the Famous Six (Bersonin). Detchard (another of the Famous Six) rushes into the King's room to kill him. The loyal doctor tries to prevent Detchard from killing the King. But he is killed. Rassendyll confronts Detchard. He is injured but continues to fight on and kills Detchard. The King is hurt in the fight. Rassendyll hears Rupert's voice reaching the drawbridge. Rupert challenges Michael to fight him. Antoinette de Mauban shouts out that Michael is dead. She holds a gun and tries to shoot Rupert but he jumps into the moat to escape. Rassendyll jumps into the moat to get Rupert. Rassendyll challenges Rupert to a one to one fight but Rupert declines. Rupert is only interested in escaping. Rassendyll cuts Rupert on his cheek with his sword. Rupert is injured. Fritz arrives and Rupert flees upon seeing him. Rassendyll is too weak to go after Rupert and faints. The King is safe. Rassendyll gets the full story from Antoinette de Mauban on what happened in the castle. Fritz and Sapt inform the King of the situation at Zenda Castle. The Princess and the Marshal arrive at Zenda to see the King. Princess Flavia meets Rassendyll and finds out the truth. Rassendyll meets the real King (Rudolf the Fifth). The King appreciates Rassendyll's efforts to save him and his kingdom. Rassendyll keeps to his word to save the King and country. Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz ride and reach the border of Ruritania. Rassendyll gets onto the train.

Rassendyll returns to England. Rose was disappointed when she knew that Rudolf didn't write a book. Rassendyll declines the offer to be the "attaché" of Sir Jacob Borrodaile, Ambassador to Ruritania.

**Rassendyll learnt that a person with a position in society has responsibilities. But even without a position in society, we all have a duty to help other people when we can.**

### A. Answer these questions.

1. Where does Rassendyll wait for it to be two o'clock?

*He waits by the drawbridge gate next to the castle.*

2. Rassendyll has asked Antoinette to cry for help at two o'clock. Why does she do it earlier?

*Because she is being attacked by Rupert. He wants to punish her for writing to Rassendyll.*

3. Why does Rassendyll kill De Gautet with a sword and not with a gun?

*Because he doesn't want to make any noise and attract other people.*

4. How does Rassendyll get the keys to the King's prison?

*He takes them from De Gautet's clothes after he kills him.*

5. Who gets killed in the first room of the King's prison? Who gets killed in the room where the King is?

Who gets wounded?

*Bersonin gets killed in the first room. In the room where the King is, the doctor is killed by Detchard, and Detchard is killed by Rassendyll. The King and Rassendyll are both wounded.*

6. Why doesn't the King fight Detchard directly? How does he help Rassendyll?

*The King is weak from illness and in chains. He can't move much because of the chains. He helps Rassendyll by pushing a chair into Detchard as he is fighting. (This makes him lose his balance and fall over the doctor's body. Then it is easy for Rassendyll to kill him.)*

7. Who kills the Duke?

*Rupert Hentzau.*

8. Why does Rupert ride away instead of fighting Rassendyll?

*Because Fritz comes with a gun and Rupert knows he can't fight both of them. (A gun can kill from a distance. Fritz can kill Rupert from a distance before Rupert can kill Rassendyll with a sword.)*

9. How does the boy make a problem for Sapt, Fritz and Rassendyll? Why does Sapt tell the Princess to come alone to see the King behind the tree?

*The boy runs out and says the King is behind the tree, but Strakencz and the Princess think that the King is in the castle. Sapt has a problem to explain this. He asks the Princess to come alone because he doesn't want Marshal Strakencz to know about Rassendyll.*

10. Why does Sapt have the real King taken from his prison with his face covered? What do Sapt's men and the servants think happened to the King and to the prisoner? Why does Rassendyll wait in the forest until dark to go to the castle?

*Sapt doesn't want his men or the servants to see who the prisoner really is. They think that the King was wounded in the fight to rescue the prisoner, and that the prisoner THE PRISONER OF ZENDA ANSWER KEYS went after Rupert Hentzau. Rassendyll waits until he can go into the castle under the cover of dark. He doesn't want anyone to see him.*

11. How does Rassendyll teach the King how to be a real king?

*He takes his responsibilities as King seriously and tries to run the country well. He risks his own life to rescue the King, could have remained King.*

12. What does Rassendyll mean when he writes "Nobody knew where Rupert had disappeared to, and the thought of the man who had almost beaten me still makes my heart beat louder in my chest"?

*It means when he thinks of Rupert he gets excited or angry. He wishes he could find him and fight him.*

13. Do you think Rassendyll was right to pretend to be the King for the coronation? Was he right to continue to pretend to be the King for so long?

*Students' opinions.*

14. Why doesn't Rassendyll remain the King? If he was a wiser and better ruler than the real King, would it be wrong for him to remain King?

*Students' opinions.*

15. What does Rassendyll learn from his adventures?

*He learns responsibility, how to do the (morally) right thing. (Other answers possible)*

**Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:**

1. Antoinette de Mauban calls for help at the appointed time. (*almost an hour early*)

2. Johann is seriously hurt in the fighting. (*is not*)

3. When Rassendyll enters the prison, De Gautet and Hentzau are there. (*Bersonin and Detchard*)

4. The doctor tries to kill the King from Detchard. (*protect*)

5. The Duke's servants do not accept Antoinette as their leader. (*Rupert*)

6. Rassendyll does not wound Rupert before he escapes. (*He manages to cut Rupert's cheek*)

7. Rupert thinks that if the Duke is dead, Rassendyll will remain Duke and reward him. (*King*)

8. Johann and Antoinette know that the prisoner was Rassendyll. (*the King*)

9. Rassendyll spends the day in the mansion in the room with the King. (*He spends the day in the forest. He comes to the castle at night and stays in the rooms that had been the King's prison.*)

10. Sapt wants Rassendyll to come to Strelsau. (*The King .....but Sapt tells him it's not possible.*)

11 Back home, Rassendyll agrees to work with Sir Jacob Borrodaile. (*He refuses because Sir Jacob is going to be the ambassador to Ruritania, and there will be problems because Rassendyll looks like the King.*)

Read the quotations and answer the questions.

"This woman's been writing secret letters to Rassendyll! She needs to be punished!"

1. Who says this to whom?

*Rupert Hentzau says this to Duke Michael.*

2. Who is "this woman"?

*"This woman" is Antoinette de Mauban.*

3. What is the speaker doing while saying this?

*He is attacking Antoinette and fighting with Duke Michael.*

"Dead! That's good. Then I'm your leader now. Put down your weapons and do as I say."

1. Who says this to whom?

*Rupert Hentzau says this to the Duke's servants (standing near the door of the mansion).*

2. Where is the speaker?

*He is standing on the drawbridge (between the mansion and castle).*

3. Do the people obey him? What happens?

*No, they don't obey him. They let Madame de Mauban try to shoot him.*

"Why didn't you follow my plan? We could have worked well together."

1. Who says this to whom?

*Rupert Hentzau says this to Rassendyll.*

2. Where are they and what has just happened?

*They are in the forest near the castle. Rupert has killed the Duke; Rassendyll has killed the others of the Six Men and rescued the King.*

3. What was the plan that wasn't followed?

*Rassendyll would attack when Rupert said to. The King, the Duke, Sapt, and Fritz would all die. Rassendyll would remain the King and Hentzau would be rewarded.*

"I hoped that tomorrow, you'd come with me to Strelsau and tell everyone about the brave things that you've done, but Sapt tells me that this isn't possible."

1. Who says this to whom?

*The (real) King says this to Rassendyll.*

2. Where are they?

*They are in a bedroom in the mansion.*

3. What do these words tell you about the speaker's character and the speaker's relationship with Sapt?

*The speaker perhaps does not have good judgement. He depends a lot on Sapt. He needs Sapt to give him advice. (Opinions may vary)*

Read the quotations and answer the questions.

1) "The Duke's dead, you've already killed him!"

*Antoinette to Rupert*

2) "Thanks to you, he is. But you're injured. Here, let me help you."

*Fritz to Rassendyll*

3) "He's right, sir. My work in your country is complete."

*Rassendyll to the King*

4) "People know that the King was injured, so they won't be surprised to see me looking a little different."

*The king to Rassendyll*

5) "But you've taught me something, cousin. You've shown me what a true King should be."

*The King to Rassendyll*

6) "I've learned all about duties and responsibilities. It's a lesson I'll never forget."

*Rassendyll to the princess*

7) "At least the ambassador has a job for you soon. He now knows which country he'll be sent to."

*Rose to Rassendyll*

## Practice Test 1

### A) Answer the following questions:

1- What is the setting (time and place) of *The Prisoner of Zenda*?

*The setting is Europe in the 1890s / late 19th century.*

2- How old is Rudolf when the events of the story start?

*Rudolf is 29 years old.*

3- According to Rose, how is Rudolf Rassendyll different from his brother Robert?

*Rudolf is different because he does not take his duties to society seriously. He doesn't work.*

4- Mention three skills that Rudolf Rassendyll has.

*He can speak several languages (German, French, Spanish, Italian), he can ride a horse and he can fight with a sword.*

### B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

*"Why should I do anything? I have nearly enough money to do anything I want to (no one ever has quite enough money to do that, of course), and I enjoy an important position in society."*

1- Who said this?

*Rudolf Rassendyll said this.*

2- To whom was it said?

*It was said to Rose Rassendyll / his sister-in-law.*

3- Do you agree that people who have a lot of money should do nothing? Explain your point of view.

*No, everyone should have something to do because work makes man an important person.*

### C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1- Rudolf Rassendyll told Rose he was going to go walking in the West Indies.

*Rudolf Rassendyll told Rose he was going to go walking in the Alps.*

2- The King invited Rassendyll to stay with his family in Strelsau.

*Johann invited Rassendyll to stay with his family in Strelsau. / The King invited Rassendyll to have dinner with him in the hunting lodge.*

## Practice Test 2

### A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why wasn't Rassendyll as sick as the King was?

*He only ate one cake so he ate less poison. / ...didn't eat much poison.*

2- Why did Fritz and Sapt lock up Johann's mother with the King?

*They locked her up so that she wouldn't tell Michael's men that Rassendyll was pretending to be the King at the coronation.*

3- Why was Rassendyll afraid when he saw Antoinette de Mauban on the balcony?

*He was afraid that she would recognise him and say that he wasn't the real King.*

4- According to Flavia, how has Rassendyll (the King) changed in his appearance?

*She says that his face is thinner and he acts more serious.*

### B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

*"I heard that you rode through the old town alone. That surprised me. The people there must really have appreciated what you did."*

1- Who said this?

*Princess Flavia said this.*

2- To whom was it said?

*It was said to the Rassendyll / the pretend King.*

3- Why did the people appreciate this action?

*It showed the people that the King cared about them and trusted them.*

### C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1- The rich people who had always lived well would support the Duke. (King)

2- Sapt and Fritz believed that Rassendyll had poisoned the King. (Duke Michael)

## Practice Test 3

### A) Answer the following questions:

1- Why couldn't the Duke say anything about Rassendyll even though he knew Rassendyll was not the King?

*He couldn't say anything because he would have to admit that he had kidnapped the real King.*

2- How did Sapt explain Rassendyll's injured finger to Freyler?

*Sapt told Freyler that Rassendyll had caught his finger in a door.*

3- Why was Rassendyll keen on getting the people of Ruritania to like him more than they liked the Duke?

*He thought that if there was a fight between him and the Duke, the people would support him (the "King").*

4- Why couldn't the Duke ever become King unless he married Flavia?

*The Duke's mother wasn't royal, so by law/legally he couldn't become King unless he married Princess Flavia.*

### B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

*"You do know that Michael will be very angry. Is that a good idea?"*

1- Who said this?

*Princess Flavia said this.*

2- To whom was it said?

*It was said to Rassendyll (the King).*

3- What was it that would make Michael very angry?

*Rassendyll didn't ask Michael to come into the room and he can't enter without the King's permission.*

### C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1- Rassendyll was worried when the French prince asked him a question which he could not answer. (ambassador)

2- Freyler was Sapt's farmer. (servant)

## Practice Test 4

### A) Answer the following questions:

1- Rassendyll has never liked responsibilities. Now he has many. What responsibilities does he have? *He has to run the country and rescue the real King.*

2- Why does Rassendyll become good at pretending he has forgotten rules or people he has met? *He has to do this so that people will still think he is the real King.*

3 Rassendyll tells the Princess that when he was younger, he thought he didn't need to worry about society. Why does he say this?

*He is forgetting to pretend to be the King. He is thinking of his own youth.*

4- How does the Princess react to Rassendyll's recalling that he thought he had no need to worry about society?

*She is surprised because he always knew he would be King, so he should expect to have responsibilities.*

### B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

*"It would be very useful for Michael if you disappeared. And if you disappear, the game's over."*

1- Who says this?

*Colonel Sapt says this.*

2- Why does the speaker say this?

*He is explaining why he has men guarding Rassendyll everywhere he goes.*

3- What game would be over if the person disappeared? **Explain.**

*The game is Rassendyll pretending to be King. If he disappeared, Duke Michael would kill the real King and make himself King.*

### C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1- No one goes into the castle without Michael's or Sapt's permission. (Rupert's)

2- The letter from Antoinette tells the King to come to the summer house with a friend. (alone)

## Practice Test 5

### A) Answer the following questions:

1- What is the reason Rassendyll claims is the cause of his handwriting being different from the King's? He claims that his hand still hurts from his injury so he can't write as well as before.

2- "The thing I hunt is a very big animal," Rassendyll explains. What is Rassendyll really hunting?

*He is really hunting Duke Michael.*

3- To whom did the large, modern country house called Tarlenheim belong?

*It belonged to a relative of Fritz.*

4- Rassendyll, Sapt and Fritz took ten brave and strong gentlemen that they trusted to hunt down Michael. What reason did they give to the gentlemen?

*They told the gentlemen that Duke Michael was holding a friend of the King as a prisoner.*

### B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

*"As you know, his mother was not royal and he can only legally become King if he marries the Princess."*

1- Who said this?

*Rassendyll (pretending to be the King) said this.*

2- To whom was it said?

*It was said to Marshal Strakencz.*

3- Who cannot become King unless he marries the Princess?

*Duke Michael/The Duke of Strelsau cannot become King unless he marries the Princess.*

### C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1- The owner's wife at the inn thought that Rassendyll was the King. (daughter)

2- Of the Six Men, four of them were Ruritanians. (three)

## Practice Test 6

### A) Answer the following questions:

1- What did Johann tell Rassendyll about the real King's condition?

*He told him the King was ill and weak.*

2- Why does Rassendyll say he was forced to stab Max Holf to death?

*It was war. He had to do it to rescue the King.*

3- What did the Chief of Police in Strelsau tell Rassendyll (the King) about what they had learned about the real Rassendyll?

*They had found his bags at the train station and they thought he was travelling with Madame de Mauban.*

4- Why was Michael keeping Madame de Mauban as a prisoner in his castle?

*Because he knew that she had warned Rassendyll at the summer house.*

### B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

*"He's not a good man. He makes me angry. I nearly killed him myself last night. Think carefully about my plan."*

1- Who said this?

*Rupert Hentzau said this.*

2- To whom was it said?

*It was said to Rassendyll.*

3- What is the speaker's plan?

*He will help Rassendyll attack the castle. But Sapt, Fritz, the King and the Duke must die. Rassendyll will remain King and Rupert will get a reward.*

### C) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1- Max Holf is Johann's uncle. (brother)

2- Mr Featherly from Paris believed Rudolph Rassendyll was travelling with Flavia. (Antoinette de Mauban)

تمارين موقع  
Longman  
Practice test 1

**a. Answer the following questions:**

1. Why was Rose angry with Rudolf at breakfast?

She was angry because Rudolf didn't want to work or have any responsibilities.

2. Why did Rassendyll decide to go to Ruritania?

*He wanted to see the coronation of the new King of Ruritania.*

3. Why did the innkeeper like Duke Michael more than the King?

*Duke Michael had always lived in Ruritania and cared about the people. The King had lived abroad and the people didn't know him.*

4. How could the old castle of Zenda be reached? How could the mansion be reached?

*The old castle could be reached only by a drawbridge. The mansion could be reached by a road.*

**b. Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:**

*"The King likes to live well. Let's say he prefers eating to action, but he's a kind man and he's our King. We'd do anything for him."*

1. Who does Fritz say this to?

*Fritz says this to Rassendyll.*

2. In what way is the King like the listener?

*They both like to live well and not to work.*

3. How does the King's character cause a problem for him that night?

*He likes to eat too much and he ate a lot of the poisoned cakes that Duke Michael sent.*

**c. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:**

1. George Featherly took the same train as Rassendyll from Paris to Ruritania. (Antoinette de Mauban)

2. Fritz's brother was Lord Burlesdon. (Rassendyll's)

Practice test 2

**7) A: Answer the following questions:**

1) Why did Duke Michael poison the King?

*He didn't want him to be crowned King the next day. / He wanted to prevent him from going to the coronation.*

2) How long did Rassendyll expect to pretend to be the King?

*He expected to pretend to be the King for one day / until midnight.*

3) Why was Sapt anxious when Rassendyll rode through the old part of town alone?

*Sapt thought the people in the old part of town might hurt him because they didn't like the King.*

4) How did Rassendyll and Sapt get a permit to leave the city?

*Sapt was able to copy the King's signature onto a form.*

**b. Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:**

*"Nervous. I'm not made of stone, you know".*

1) Who said this to Sapt?

*Rassendyll said this.*

2) Where were they when this was said?

*They were in/near Strelsau. / They were approaching the train station in Strelsau.*

3) Why was the speaker nervous?

*He was afraid people would realise that he was not the real King.*

**c. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:**

1) Rassendyll had to go to Dresden and pretend to be the King. (Strelsau)

2. Rassendyll found the dead body of the King in the hunting lodge cellar. (Josef)

Practice test 3

**a. Answer the following questions:**

1. How did Duke Michael know that Rassendyll was not the real King?

*Duke Michael knew that the real King had been poisoned and was at the hunting lodge. / His men (must have) sent him a message that the King was asleep at the hunting lodge.*

2. Why did the men who came to the lodge have spades with them?

*They had spades because they were going to bury Josef's body.*

3. Why did Rassendyll continue to pretend to be the King after the coronation day?

*Because the real King was missing from the lodge/taken by Michael's men.*

4. Who is Detchard?

*Detchard is an Englishman who is one of Duke Michael's special soldiers/Six Men.*

**b. Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:**

*"Brother, I'm so sorry. I didn't know you were waiting, otherwise I'd have asked you in sooner."*

1. Where were they when Rassendyll said this to Michael?

*They were at Princess Flavia's palace.*

2. Why didn't Michael go into the room before he was asked?

*He couldn't go into the room without the King's permission (because he wasn't royal.)*

3. Why didn't Rassendyll ask him to come into the room sooner?

*He didn't know that Michael needed the King's permission. (He pretended to the Princess that he had forgotten the rule.)*

**c. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:**

1. Fritz and Rassendyll rode to the palace to see Madame Antoinette. (Princess Flavia)

2. Rassendyll and Josef rode from Strelsau to the hunting lodge to get the King. (Sapt)

### Practice test 4

#### a. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Rassendyll remember Rose's words about responsibilities when he left Princess Flavia's palace?

*Because he suddenly realised that he had always wanted a quiet life but now he had many responsibilities and he wondered how he had got into that situation.*

2. What did Antoinette tell Rassendyll when he went to the summer house?

*She told him that Michael's men were planning to kill him there and that he must leave before they came.*

3. How did Sapt react when Rassendyll almost told Princess Flavia the truth of who he was?

*Sapt's face was angry but he calmly told Rassendyll that someone was waiting to see him.*

4. What did Sapt want Rassendyll to do at the ball?

*Sapt wanted Rassendyll to propose to Princess Flavia.*

#### b. Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

*"You do not know me, but I do not want you to fall into the power of the Duke".*

1. Who wrote these words in a letter?

*Antoinette de Mauban wrote these words.*

2. Who was the letter addressed to?

*The letter was addressed to Princess Flavia.*

3. What advice did the letter give?

*The letter said that she should not accept any invitation from Duke Michael and that she should not go anywhere without many guards.*

#### c. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1. The Duke spoke to Rassendyll through the summer house door. (Detchard)

2. Rassendyll asked Marshal Streلسau to protect Princess Flavia from the Duke. (Strankencz)

### Practice test 5

#### a. Answer the following questions:

1. Where was Bernenstein when he was shot?

*Bernenstein was alone in the woods near the house at Tarlenheim.*

2. Why did the King's prison have a large stone pipe leading to the moat?

*If the Duke killed the King, he would put his body into the moat through the pipe.*

3. Why do you think Johann was willing to act as a spy for Rassendyll?

*(Suggested answers) Because he didn't like the Duke. / Because he wanted to help the King. / Because he was paid a lot of money.*

4. What happened at the house at Tarlenheim on the night Rassendyll's men attacked the castle?

*There was music and bright lights so that it looked like there was a ball.*

#### b. Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

*"That will leave two men alive: you and me. You'll stay as the King and I'll have a reward".*

1. Who said this to Rassendyll?

*Rupert Hentzau said this.*

2. What was the plan that the person suggested?

*He suggested that he set the time for an attack on the castle, but Sapt, Fritz, the King and the Duke must all die.*

3. Why do you think Rassendyll refused this plan?

*(Suggested answers) Because he knew this was morally wrong. / Because he had a duty to rescue the King. / Because he knew he couldn't trust Rupert.*

#### c. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it :

1. Detchard stabbed Rassendyll in the shoulder. (Hentzau)

2. When the King was sick in his prison, Princess Flavia helped to take care of him. (Antoinette de Mauban)

### Practice test 6

#### a. Answer the following questions:

1. Why did Rupert attack Antoinette?

*Rupert attacked Antoinette because he learnt that she had been writing to Rassendyll.*

2. What two people were with the King when Rassendyll entered the King's prison room?

*Detchard and the doctor were with the King.*

3. Why do you think Michael's servants did not put down their weapons when Rupert told them to?

*They were loyal to the Duke, who had just been killed. / They knew that Rupert was not their boss. / They were angry that Rupert had killed the Duke.*

4. Why did Rassendyll stay in the woods after the fight at the castle?

*He didn't want anyone to see him because they would think he was the King.*

#### b. Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

*"You could have become an ambassador yourself one day! If you don't go, you'll never be anyone important"!*

1. Who said this to Rassendyll?

*His sister-in-law Rose said this.*

2. Where did the person want him to go and why?

*She wanted him to go to Ruritania to be the assistant to the new British ambassador.*

3. Why didn't Rassendyll want to do what the person wanted?

*He didn't want to be an ambassador because he had already been a king. / He knew it would cause problems for him to be in Ruritania because he looked so much like the King.*

#### c. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences and correct it:

1. The King had seen the Princess with Sapt, and Rupert Hentzau returned to Streلسau. (Marshal Strakencz)

2. Max was helping the Duke, so he could not open the door for Sapt and his men. (Johann)

### Selected paragraphs

Buy products "Made in Egypt"/ Protecting local products / حماية المنتج المحلي "

There is no doubt that buying products made in Egypt is really important for individuals and the society.

On the one hand, one should be proud of his country and its local products. Our local products are usually cheaper than the imported ones and sometimes better. In addition, buying our local products creates job opportunities for our youth and brings hard currency needed to import our needs. On the other hand, undoubtedly, our products have the Egyptian taste which appeals to us and copes with our nature and way of living. Not only this but also they best cope with our hot and humid weather, with our habits of eating and doing the daily work. Yet, our companies have to try their hardest to produce better quality goods. Thus, buying our local products increases our national income and raises our standard of living.

At last but not least we can come to the conclusion that when we buy our local products then we are true Egyptians and faithful to our beloved country.

#### Job opportunities for our youth

It is said that the youth are "half the present and all the future". This is really true because the youth of today will be the men of tomorrow. If we don't find them jobs, they would be idle and a burden on society. They can work under the hardest conditions in the deserts or in very cold climates. It is our duty to create job opportunities for them by carrying out different project which enables doctors, engineers, accountants, farmers to find jobs that suit their abilities and skills. Even those who are not fit for a certain job can go through different conversion training courses to learn new professions.

#### The advantages and disadvantages of modern technology مميزات وعيوب التكنولوجيا الحديثة

There is no doubt that modern technology has a lot of advantages in addition to having some disadvantages.

Our life today is quite different from life fifty years ago. Life in the past was very simple and easy. In the past people used animals to go from place to place. People died from many diseases which they could not cure. Today, thanks to modern science and technology, there are many inventions which have made man's life easier and more comfortable. Modern means of transport help us to travel long distances in a very short time. The progress in medicine has enabled us to find a cure for most diseases. We also have pure water and electric supply. However modern technology has several disadvantages. The most noticeable disadvantage is pollution. Pollution is very harmful to man's life and can cause many diseases. Man now depends too much on machines. There are a lot of people who can't find jobs because we use machines to do most of our work. Many people nowadays suffer from stress and worry. Some people may have a nervous breakdown.

At last but not least we can come to the conclusion that we cannot do without modern technology.

#### Recycling

Many societies reuse materials that are thrown away. Materials ranging from precious metals to plastic spoons can be reused. This recycling process extracts the original material and uses it in new products. In general, using recycled materials to make new products costs less and requires less energy than using new materials. The most commonly recycled waste product is printed materials. Glass is a material which is economical to recycle. The recycled glass is melted and formed into new products. Certain types of nuclear waste can be recycled. Rare materials, such as gold and silver, are recycled because getting new supplies is expensive. It reduces pollution because recycling a product creates less pollution than producing a new one. Most experts state that the economic consequences الاقتصادية of recycling are positive in the long term.

#### Financial global crisis and food scarcity الازمة الاقتصادية العالمية ونقص الغذاء

There is no longer any doubt that the financial global crisis and food security are of the most pressing problems nowadays.

On the one hand, the dramatic rises in world food prices, created a global crisis, and this caused political and economic instability and social unrest in both poor and developed nations. The cost of other staples such as rice, corn and Soya bean have also gone crazy. The increasing cost of grains is also pushing up the price of meat, poultry, eggs and dairy products. On the other hand, there are many reasons for the worldwide increases in food prices. First of all, droughts in grain producing nations and rising oil prices which heightened the costs of fertilizers. Other causes may be the increasing use of biofuels in developed countries and the world population explosion. These factors, coupled with falling world food stockpiles. It is the crisis of food scarcity which will lead millions of people to face hunger and starvation.

At last but not least we can come to the conclusion that this problem must be solved as soon as possible or we will face unbearable consequences.

#### Paragraph writing

There is no doubt that .....is one of the most important topics in our life and has its effects on everybody nowadays.

On the one hand, the in hand topic is really worth the effort and writing about. It is ..... . On the other hand, we should all bear in our minds that the handled topic is full of excitement and we can't become familiar with all aspects of the subject. Yet, I can say that .....

At last but not least we can come to the conclusion that this topic was really worth the effort and writing about as it is one of the topics of the hour.

#### Letter/e-mail writing

Dear .....

It gives me great pleasure to write to you. How nice it was to hear from you. I hope that you are well and sound better when you receive this letter/read this e-mail. No one knows how happy and pleased I am the moment I am writing to you. So please allow me to (tell you that/ thank you for/ ask you about/ congratulate you on) .....

Last but not least I take the chance to wish you the best of luck and happiness. Give my regards to yours. Looking forward to hearing from you.

Best wishes.

Yours,

.....

### Translations passages:

1) Education is becoming more and more important. People have to continue learning new skills throughout their lives. One person may do several different jobs.

تتزايد أهمية التعليم وعلى الناس الاستمرار في مواصلة تعلم لمهارات جديدة طوال حياتهم وقد يؤدي الفرد الواحد العديد من الأعمال / الوظائف

2) Throughout the world people celebrate festivals – some commemorate historical events, others are religious. They give people a chance to relax and enjoy themselves.

يحتفل الناس بالاعياد في كل انحاء العالم وبعض هذه الاحتفالات تحيي ذكري أحداث تاريخية واخرى دينية والاعياد تعطى الناس فرصة الاسترخاء

3) In recognition of the important role played by youth in building the future of the country, the state has put in place many projects as the social fund for development which aims at providing new job opportunities, providing solutions to the unemployment problem and addressing side effects of the economic reform programme.

تقديرًا للدور الهام الذي يلعبه الشباب في بناء مستقبل الوطن قدمت الدولة العديد من المشروعات مثل الصندوق الاجتماعي للتنمية والذي يهدف الى اتاحة فرصا جديدة للعمل / فرص عمل جديدة وطرح الحلول لمشكلة البطالة ومواجهة الآثار الجانبية/ الجوانب السلبية لبرنامج الاصلاح

4) Education for all. All here means both men and women, the old and they young, they rich and the poor, the educated and uneducated in both rural and urban communities. Everyone needs an education suitable for the age, its changes and its requirements so that they may contribute to education and benefit from throughout their lives.

التعليم للجميع وتعني كلمة الجميع كلا من الرجال والنساء، الكبار والصغار، الاغنياء والفقراء والمتعلمين وغير المتعلمين في كلا المجتمعات الريفية والمدنية وكل فرد منا بحاجة الى تعليم يناسب العصر ومتغيراته ومتطلباته حتى يسهموا في التعلم ويستفيدون منه طوال حياتهم.

5) Education is not an end, but a means to an end. In other words, we do not educate children for the purpose of education. Our purpose is to fit them for life. The wisest person is the one who makes full use of what life offers him without sorrowfully looking back at what he has lost.

ان التعليم ليس غاية في ذاته بل وسيلة الى غاية بمعنى اننا لا نعلم الاطفال من اجل التعليم ذاته فغرضنا من ذلك هو اعدادهم للحياة . حكمه هو الشخص الذي يستفيد تماما/ يستغل تماما ما تقدمه له الحياة دون ان ينظر الى الوراء بندم / يحزن على ما ضاع منه.

6) Egypt has always been the first country in the Nile basin to seek taming the longest river in the world in order to achieve the utmost benefit for the sake of the Egyptians. As a result, Egypt had a futuristic view towards making use of any waste of water.

لقد كانت مصر دائما وابدا هي اول دولة في حوض النيل تسعى الى ترويض اطول نهر في العالم حتى تتحقق الفائدة القصوى من اجل جميع المصريين ونتيجة لذلك كان لمصر رؤية مستقبلية نحو الاستفادة من اى فقدان / تبديد للمي .

7) There is a branch of tourism known as ecotourism. Tourists live in special resorts built in a primitive way depending on using natural materials and avoiding all environment pollutants. This kind of tourism is available in Siwa, an Egyptian oasis in the western desert .

هناك فرع في السياحة يعرف باسم السياحة البيئية ويقطن السياح في منتجعات خاصة مبنية بطريقة بدائية تعتمد على استخدام المواد الطبيعية / وتتجنب جميع ملوثات البيئة ومثل هذا النوع من السياحة متوفر/ متاح في سيوه وهي واحة مصرية في الصحراء الغربية.

8) The educational institution seek/tries hard to deep en democratic thought and train the rising generation for participation, voicing/giving opinion and constructive criticism.

تسعى المؤسسات التعليمية الى تعميق الفكر الديمقراطي وتدريب الاجيال ( يعتبر المعلم حجر الزاوية في تطوير التعليم لذا يجب ان يؤهل جيدا .

Teacher is considered the corner stone in developing education so he/she must be well-qualified.

( تسعى الحكومة الى توفير احتياجات الشعب بكل السبل وهذا يستلزم زياده الانتاج.

The government tries/seeks to provide/secure all people's needs by all possible ways and this requires increasing production.

يعتقد كثير من الناس أن الكتاب الإلكتروني سيحل محل الكتاب العادي في المستقبل القريب.

Many people think that e-book will replace the paperback (book) in the near future.

### More Translations

To be interested in something is a golden rule in life. If a person is always chained to his office, he will grow physically and mentally weak. If such a person has a hobby, his daily work will no longer be tiring.

القاعدة الذهبية في الحياة هي ان يكون لك شيء تهتم به و لو كان الشخص دائما مقيدا بمكتبه، فانه سيصبح ضعيف البدن و الدهن، ولو ان هذا الشخص لديه هواية، فان عمله اليومي لن يكون مرهقا.

The government is trying to solve the transport problem by constructing new roads and flyovers. The number of vehicles is increasing every day. Roads are becoming too crowded for drivers to use.

تحاول الحكومة حل مشكلة المواصلات بإنشاء طرق و كباري علوية جديدة، فعدد المركبات يزداد كل يوم و الطرق تصبح شديدة الازدحام بحيث يتعذر على السائقين استخدامها .

Some of the most important aims of education are to build up an Egyptian citizen who is able to face the future and to create a productive society. Education also aims at preparing a generation of scientists for the service of humanity.

ان بناء مواطن مصري يكون قادرا علي مواجهة المستقبل و خلق مجتمع منتج هي بعض أهم أهداف التعليم و يهدف التعليم أيضا إلى إعداد جيل من العلماء لخدمة البشرية.

Practising activities at school is of great importance. Teachers should encourage their students to participate effectively in school activities. Such activities help students to learn some values like co-operation, respect for others, self-confidence and perseverance.

ان ممارسة الأنشطة في المدرسة له أهمية عظيمة ويجب علي المعلمين أن يشجعوا طلابهم علي المشاركة بصورة فعالة في الأنشطة المدرسية و مثل هذه الأنشطة تساعد الطلاب علي تعلم بعض القيم مثل التعاون و احترام الآخرين و الثقة بالنفس و المثابرة.

Over-population in Egypt has led to many other problems like illiteracy, heavy traffic and unemployment. The government should exert more efforts to bring down the population growth rates. It should also pay more attention to the development of human resources.

ان التزايد السكاني في مصر قد ادي الى الكثير من المشكلات الأخرى مثل الأمية وازدحام المرور والبطالة و يجب علي الحكومة ان تبذل المزيد من جهود لتقليل معدلات النمو السكاني كما يجب عليها أيضا أن توجه اهتماما أكبر لتطوير الموارد البشرية .

Egypt does its best to attract Arab and foreign capital for investment in the field of industry. We encourage the establishment of new industries as well as expanding the existing ones. Due attention has been given to introduce software and communication industries.

تبذل مصر ما بوسعها لجذب رؤوس الأموال العربية و الأجنبية للاستثمار في مجال الصناعة . اننا نشجع إقامة صناعات جديدة و كذلك التو مه كما حظيت صناعات البرمجة و الاتصالات بالناية اللازمة

Energy is necessary for development. It is essential for all productive activities required to achieve higher standards of living. Man's great progress in industry and agriculture is due to energy.

• إن الطاقة ضرورية للتطور وهي أساسية لكل الأنشطة الإنتاجية المطلوبة لتحقيق مستويات معيشة أعلى إن تقدم الإنسان الهائل في الصناعة والزراعة يرجع إلى الطاقة.

Health is a splendid treasure that completes our happiness. It's worth saying that we can't really enjoy our life if we are unhealthy, however wealthy we may be. Healthy people are always proud of what they can achieve in the fields of sports and hard work. For unhealthy people, life is no more than pain and suffering.

• إن الصحة كنز رائع يكمل سعادتنا والجدير بالذكر أننا لا نستطيع في الحقيقة الاستمتاع بحياتنا إذا لم تكن أصحاء مهما كنا أثرياء. إن الناس الأصحاء يفخرون دائماً بما يستطيعون تحقيقه في مجالات الرياضة والعمل الشاق وبالنسبة للناس غير الأصحاء فإن الحياة ليست أكثر من مج

The government sets up industrial projects to increase our local production. It encourages the private sector to invest capital. It also demolishes the barriers that hinder economic progress.

• تقوم الحكومة بإنشاء المشروعات الصناعية لزيادة إنتاجنا المحلي وهي تشجع القطاع الخاص لاستثمار رؤوس الأموال وهي تقوم أيضاً بإزالة

Undoubtedly, tourism is a chief source of national income and hard currency. The government exerts great efforts to develop the tourist industry. The aim is to attract a greater number of tourists to visit Egypt, the land of civilization.

• مما لا شك فيه أن السياحة مصدر رئيسي للدخل القومي والعملية الصعبة وتبذل الحكومة جهوداً عظيمة لتطوير صناعة السياحة والهدف من ذلك هو جذب عدد أكبر من السياح لزيارة مصر أرض الحضارة.

Arab countries must co-operate economically to achieve prosperity for the Arab world. They should solve their problems in the Arab League. Besides, they have to encourage the Arab scientists to make progress in the field of science.

• ينبغي على الدول العربية أن تتعاون اقتصادياً لتحقيق الرخاء للعالم العربي ويجب عليها حل مشكلاتها في الجامعة العربية وبالإضافة لذلك يجب أن تشجع العلماء العرب لتحقيق التقدم في مجال العلم.

### Translate into English:

تشجع الحكومة الصناعات المحلية حتى تستطيع أن تستغني عن كثير من الواردات التي تحتاج إلى عملية صعبة.

The government encourages local industries so that we can do without a lot of imports which need hard currency.

لقد أصبح الاهتمام بالتعليم والعلوم من أهم الأهداف التي تسعى لتحقيقها جمهورية مصر العربية.

Interest in education and science has become one of the most important aims that the Arab Republic of Egypt tries to achieve.

من الطبيعي أن تكون لمصر علاقات قوية مع كل الدول لأنها دولة رائدة في كل المجالات.

It is normal for Egypt to have strong relations with all countries because it is a pioneering country in all fields.

يقاس تقدم الأمم بمدى اهتمامها بقضايا البيئة على اختلاف أنواعها.

The progress of nations is measured by how much they are interested in the different kinds of environmental issues.

تشجع الحكومة الصناعات المحلية حتى نستغني عن كثير من الواردات التي تحتاج إلى الكثير من العملة الصعبة.

The government encourages the local industries to dispense with a lot of imports that need a lot of hard currency.

### A) Translate into English:

• حرية التعبير مباحة ولكن دون جرح مشاعر الآخرين.

Freedom of expression is allowed but hurting people's feelings is forbidden.

• مل الجاد من أجل بناء مستقبل وطننا العظيم.

It is time to work hard to build the future of our great country.

• نحترم كل الأديان والديمقراطية والحقوق البشرية وكل القيم.

We respect all religions, democracy, human rights, and all values

• ينبغي علينا إقامة مشروعات اقتصادية تهدف إلى تخفيض مساحة الفقر وتحسين أحوال الصحة والتعليم في مصر.

We should establish economic projects aiming to reduce the area of poverty and to improve health and education in Egypt.

• نأمل أن يعود الهدوء والامن والاستقرار للشارع المصري حتى تتحقق التنمية.

We hope that calmness, security and stability will return to the Egyptian street so achieve development.

• يجب أن يتعاون الجميع من أجل تقدم ورفاهية بلدنا.

We must all cooperate in order to progress and prosperity of our country.

• الشباب المصري أنهم قادرون على تحقيق المعجزات.

Egyptian youth have proved that they are able to achieve miracles.

• يعتمد تقدم أي أمه على شبابها والجهود التي يبذلونها.

Progress of any country depends on its youth and their efforts. The

• تحتاج الدولة لجهود الشباب لتحقيق التقدم والرفاهية والرخاء.

The country needs the efforts of young people to achieve progress and prosperity and welfare

• يجب علينا أن نشجع الشباب في كل المجالات من أجل ازدهار مصر.

We must encourage young people in all fields for the prosperity of Egypt.

• نتطلع مصر إلى أداء اقتصادي مختلف، يجعل منها دولة قوية اقتصادياً وسياسياً يحقق آمال الشباب.

Egypt is looking forward to different economic performance which makes it a powerful country economically and politically to achieve the hopes of young people.

• تهتم الدولة بالموهوبين وتقدم لهم جوائز قيمة في المناسبات المختلفة.

The state gives great interest to the talented and offers them valuable prizes on different occasions.

• نحن ندين بالكثير للعلماء لما قدموه من إسهامات عديدة لخدمة البشرية.

We owe much to the scientists as they have made a lot of contributions for the sake of humanity.

• يجب أن تعمل الحكومة والأفراد معاً على تقديم المزيد من الدعم والمساعدة للمعاقين والأطفال ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة.

The government and the individuals should work together to offer more support and help the handicapped and the children with special needs.

- الهجرة الشرعية هي حق كل مواطن ولكن الهجرة الغير شرعية تعرضه لمخاطر كثيرة.
- Legal immigration is every citizen's right but illegal immigration exposes him to a lot of risks.
- تهتم الحكومة اهتماما كبيرا بإقامة المشروعات الضخمة في سيناء وصعيد مصر والوادي الجديد.
- The government is greatly interested in setting up huge projects in Sinai, Upper Egypt and the New Valley.
- تعمل القراءة على النهوض بالطفل وتنمية مواهبه لكي يكون لديه القدرة على الإبداع.
- Reading helps to upgrade the child and develop his talents so that he may have the ability of creativity.
- تعمل الحكومة على تشجيع الاستثمارات الأجنبية في مصر وذلك لتوفير فرص عمل لآلاف الخريجين.
- The government encourages the foreign investments in Egypt to provide job opportunities for thousands of graduate.
- ان قضية إصلاح التعليم من أخطر القضايا التي تواجه المجتمع المصري حيث إن البحث العلمي أحد ركائز الامن القومي .
- The issue of education reform is one of the most serious issues facing the Egyptian society as scientific research is one of the pillars of national security.

### Translations passages: Workbook

#### 1) Translate into Arabic:

Currently, the cost of a holiday in space is very high. But the more people want something, the cheaper it will become. So if you are interested, start saving now!  
حالياً تكلفة (قضاء) إجازة بالفضاء الخارجى عالية جداً. لكن كلما زاد أكثر عدد الناس الذين يريدونها كلما أصبحت أرخص. فإن/فإذا كنت مهتماً ( ) !

#### Translate into English:

Two million pounds is a lot of money, isn't it?  
( اثنا مليون جنيه مبلغ كبير من المال، أليس كذلك؟ )  
In some places, sugar cane is used to make fuels for cars and other vehicles.  
( فى بعض الأماكن يُستخدم قصب السكر فى صناعة الوقود للسيارات ومركبات أخرى. )

#### 2) Translate into Arabic:

If wood is heated, chemicals are produced which can be used to make medicines and some kinds of plastic. Wood products are also used in some types of ice cream.  
عندما يتم تسخين الخشب، تُنتج بعض الكيماويات التي يمكن استخدامها في صنع الأدوية وبعض أنواع البلاستيك. كما يتم استخدام المنتجات الخشبية في بعض أنواع الآيس كريم.

#### Translate into English:

While he was finishing one story, he was thinking of the next/following one.  
( عندما كان يوشك على الانتهاء من رواية، كان يفكر فى الرواية التالية )  
Her books have been published in over/more than a hundred countries.  
( تم نشر كتبها فى أكثر من مائة دولة حول العالم. )

#### 3) Translate into Arabic:

If you live in southern Europe or Africa, you know that the temperatures are higher and there is less rain than if you live in northern Europe or Canada. It is unusual for the weather forecast to surprise us.  
إذا/إن كنت تعيش بجنوب أوروبا أو بإفريقيا، فانت تعلم أن درجات الحرارة أعلى (ومعدل هطول / نسبة) الأمطار أقل من (مناطق مثل) شمال أوروبا أو كندا. فمن غير المعتاد أن تدهشنا/تفاجئنا النشرة الجوية.

#### Translate into English:

It was really windy last night, wasn't it? / The wind was blowing hard throughout the night, wasn't it?  
( كانت الرياح بالقطع شديدة خلال الليل، أليس كذلك؟ )  
It must have been very windy during the night, mustn't it?  
( أحمد وعلا وعدونا أن يكونوا هنا غداً فى الصباح الباكر. )  
Ahmed and Ola promised (that) they would be here early the next morning.

#### 4) Translate into Arabic:

Everyone who has travelled in space has described the magical feeling of looking down on the Earth as it spins. It is impossible to go for a walk. However, you can do exercises.  
رى لروية الكرة الأرضية (من أعلى) وهى تدور. من المستحيل أن يذهب المرء للتمشية (وهو هناك)، ولكن يمكن ممارسة التمرينات (الرياضية).

#### Translate into English:

Do you switch off the lights when you are not in a room?  
( هل تطفى الأنوار حينما تكون خارج الغرفة؟ )  
After finishing school, Dalia went to/ joined Cairo University.  
( بعدما أنهت دراستها المدرسية التحقت داليا بجامعة القاهرة. )

#### 5) Translate into Arabic:

Yahia Haqqi was born in 1905 in the Sayyida Zeinab district of Cairo. He graduated in law and worked for a short time as a lawyer. In 1929, he began his career as a diplomat.  
وُلد يحيى حقى عام فى حى السيدة زينب بالقاهرة. تخرج من كلية الحقوق وعمل/اشتغل لفترة قصيرة كمحام. فى عام بدأ حياته المهنية كدبلوماسى.

#### Translate into English:

If you are worried, you should ask your parents for advice.  
( لو كنت قلقاً، عليك أن تسأل والديك النصيحة. )  
What kinds of things (activities) do you like doing/ to do at weekends?  
( ما نوعية الأنشطة التي تحب أن تمارسها خلال نهاية الأسبوع؟ )

#### 6) Translate into Arabic:

Egypt has amazing works of ancient and modern engineering. At the south of Aswan, forexample, Abu Simbel is the site of two temples. These were carved into a cliff in about 1250 BC.  
مصر فيها الكثير من الأعمال الهندسية المدهشة، القديمة والحديثة كلك. ففي جنوب أسوان، على سبيل المثال، أبو سمبل موقع لمعبدين. تم حفرهم قبل الميلاد.

#### Translate into English:

Excuse me, could you tell me/what's the best way to get to/reach the station?  
( عفواً، هل يمكن أن ترشدنى إلى أحسن طريق للوصول إلى المحطة؟ )  
The sun is very strong and you should not look straight/directly at it.  
( الشمس قوية جداً و عليك ألا تنظر إليها مباشرة. )

### 7) Translate into Arabic:

We now know that plants and trees make their own food. Their leaves are like factories producing everything they need, so that plants can change the energy from the sun into chemical energy.

نعلم/نعرف أن النباتات والأشجار تنتج غذاءها بنفسها. فأغصانها مثل المصانع تنتج كل ما تحتاج له، بحيث تتمكن النباتات من تغيير/تحويل الطاقة (المستمدة) من الشمس إلى طاقة كيميائية/كيميائية.

### Translate into English:

( كانت مرهقة لأنها ظلت واقفة طوال اليوم في عملها.  
She was exhausted/tired because she was/had been standing all day at (her) work.

( يؤسفنا أن نخبركم أن الإحتفالية لن تقام ها العام.  
We regret/are sorry to inform/tell you (that) the celebration/festival won't be held this year.

### 8) Translate into Arabic:

In the eighth century, Arab travellers who traded with China learned how to make paper. At first, paper was very expensive because it was made from cotton, but later it was produced from wood and so became much cheaper.

في القرن الثامن، تعلم الرحلة العرب الذين تاجروا مع الصين كيفية صنع الورق. في البداية، كان الورق مكلفاً جداً لأنه كان يُصنع من تم تصنيعه من الخشب وبالتالي أصبح أرخص كثيراً.

### Translate into English:

( لا يزال عملها مقدرًا اليوم، والى أخذ جزءاً كبيراً من حياتها الشخصية.  
Her work, which had taken up much of her personal life, is still appreciated today.

( عندما استيقظت إيمان في الصباح الباكر، رأت الجو ممطراً.  
On waking up early in the morning, Eman saw that it was raining.

### 9) Translate into Arabic:

To remain employable, individuals must be good at the jobs they are doing and predict what skills they may need in the future. In today's world, lifelong learning helps people to get these skills.

للبقاء صالحاً للتوظيف/قادراً على التقدم لوظائف مختلفة، (يتوجب) على الأفراد أن يكونوا مهرة/جيدين فيما يقومون به من أعمال/وظائف حالياً وأن يتنبأوا بالمهارات التي قد يحتاجونها مستقبلاً/في المستقبل. ففي عالم اليوم/سوق العمل، يساعد التعليم المستمر الناس على اكتساب هذه المهارات.

### Translate into English:

( سألتها عن الجامعة التي كانت تدرس بها.  
I asked her about the university she has been/gone to.

( إذا كنت أريد أن أبدأ هذه السنة فعلى أن أتقدم بأوراقى قبل نهاية الأسبوع القادم.  
If I want to start this year, (then) I have to apply before/by the end of next week.

### 10) Translate into Arabic:

By the time Alexandre Dumas was 20, his mother had spent all her money. He then went to live in Paris. There he found work as a secretary to an old friend of his father.

عندما بلغ/أصبح ألكسندر دوما/دوماس عشرين عاماً، كانت أمه قد أنفقت مالها كله. حينها ذهب للعمل في باريس، ووجد هناك عملاً كسكرتير/كأمين سر لصديق قديم لوالده/لأبيه.  
بحلول عيد الميلاد العشرين لألكسندر دوما/دوماس، كانت أمه قد أنفقت مالها كله. حينها ذهب للعمل في باريس، ووجد هناك عملاً كسكرتير/كأمين سر لصديق قديم لوالده/لأبيه.

### Translate into English:

( ليتنى استذكرت باجتهاد عندما كان الوقت متاحاً.  
I wish I had studied harder when I had the time.

( ما نوعية الموسيقى التي تحب سماعها؟  
What kind of music do you like to listen/listening to?

### 11) Translate into Arabic:

Every year, millions of trees are cut down to make new paper. Fortunately, the trees that give us the best wood for paper grow very quickly. Old paper can also be recycled.

كل عام/سنة، يتم قطع ملايين الأشجار لتصنيع/إنتاج/لعمل ورقاً جديداً، لحسن الحظ، الشجر الذي يعطينا أجود/أفضل (أنواع) الخشب ( ) الورق ينمو بسرعة كبيرة. كما أنه يمكن إعادة تدوير الورق القديم.

### Translate into English:

( إذا لم تجتهد أكثر في دروسك سوف تفشل في الاختبار.  
If you don't study a bit harder, you'll fail the test.

( أعتقد أن الناس سيقومون بقراءة كتبهم لذمتهم.  
I think people will go on reading books for their own enjoyment.

### 12) Translate into Arabic:

Thirty years ago, most university students believed that when they graduated, their education had finished. They expected to get a job and work for one employer. They would work in one place until they retired.

منذ ثلاثين عاماً (مضت)، كان طلاب الجامعات يعتقدون أنه ما إن يتخرجون/يكملون دراستهم الجامعية، فإن تعليمهم قد انتهى/تم، و (كانوا يعتقدون) أنهم سيحصلون على وظيفة واحدة (فقط) وأنهم سيعملون لدى الشخص نفسه/الجهة نفسها. كانوا يعملون/يشتغلون في مكان واحد حتى بلوغ سن

### Translate into English:

( هل فكرت في الالتحاق بجامعة؟  
Have you thought about applying to a university abroad after you graduate?

( كونه ثرياً/غنياً لا يحل المشاكل./امتلاك الكثير من المال لا يحل المشاكل.  
Being wealthy/rich does not always solve problems./Having a lot of money does not necessarily solve problems.

Translate into English:-

- تبذل الحكومة أقصى جهدها لتمكين المواطن المصري من مجابهة ارتفاع تكاليف المعيشة (ث.ع )
- 1- The government does its best to enable the Egyptian citizen to face the rising cost of living.  
- من لا يدخنون مطلقا يعيشون حياة أطول وأكثر صحة لذا تناقص كثيرا عدد المدخنين (ث.ع 1982)
- 2- Doctors have proved that those who don't smoke at all live a longer and healthier life. Therefore, the number of smokers has greatly decreased.  
- يعتبر نهر النيل ( . )
- 3- The River Nile is considered a source of prosperity for the peoples of Egypt and the Sudan.  
- من الطبيعي ان تكون لمصر علاقات قوية مع السودان (ودول حوض النيل). (ث.ع )
- 4- It is natural for Egypt to have strong relations with the Sudan (and the Nile basin countries).  
- الضوضاء التي تسببها المدنية الحديثة تؤثر تأثيرا سينا عى سمعنا. (ث ع 1984)
- 5- The noise caused by modern civilization has a bad effect on our hearing.  
- علينا ألا نزعج المرضى أو الطلبة الذين يستذكرون دروسهم وذلك بمراعاة الهدوء. (ث.ع 1984)
- 6- We mustn't disturb patients or students studying their lessons by keeping quiet.  
- تسعى الحكومة الى توفير احتياجات الشعب بكل السبل وهذا يستلزم زياده الانتاج. (ث.ع 1985)
- 7- The government is trying to provide people with what they need by all possible means. This requires increasing production.  
- يعنى لكل مصرى فخور بمصريته مياها تروى الأرض وتحمى الشعب من قحط الجفاف وكهرباء تدير صناعه ( )
- 8-The High Dam means to any Egyptian, who is proud of being so, the water that irrigates the land and protects people/the people from drought, and the electricity that operates factories and lights houses.  
- ستكون جنوب سيناء فى المستقبل القريب مركز سياحيا هاما. ( )
- 9-South Sinai will be an important centre for tourism in the near future.  
- لقد وهب الله مصر كثير من الموارد الطبيعیه التي لو احسن استغلالها لاصبنا من أغنى الدول. (ث.ع )
- 10- Allah/God has bestowed/gifted Egypt with lots of natural resources. If we make good use of them, we will be one of the richest countries.  
- إعادته النظر فى الخريطة السكانية لمصر والاتجاه على ضفتى النيل. ( )
- 11- It is necessary for us to/We must reconsider the population map of Egypt and go to the desert to reclaim it instead of overcrowding on the two banks of the Nile.  
- تنعم مصر بثوره ثقافیه تتمثل فى ( . )
- 12- Egypt enjoys a cultural revolution in the form of libraries for children and the youth in cities and villages alike.  
- مسؤوليه كل مصرى تجاه الاشجار والزهور كبيره فهى تقلل من نسبة التلوث البيئى ( )
- 13- The responsibility of every Egyptian towards trees and flowers is great because they reduce the percentage of the environmental pollution.  
- تشجع الحكومة رجال الاعمال فى المصريين على إنشاء المصانع وإستصلاح الاراضى خاصه فى سيناء اطق الصحراوييه ( )
- 14- The government encourages the Egyptian businessmen to set up factories and reclaim the desert especially in Sinai and desert areas.  
- يستطيع المصريون تحويل الصحراء الى ارض خضراء لانتاج المزيد من الغذاء (ث.ع 1996)
- 15-The Egyptians can turn/change the desert into green land to produce more food.  
- الحديثه الكثير من المزايا كما أن لها بعض العيوب (ث.ع )
- 16- Modern advantages have many advantages as well as some disadvantages.  
- تتطلع جميع شعوب العالم الى العيش معا فى حب ( . )
- 17- All countries of the world look forward to living together in love and peace.  
- إن زراعه الصحراء وبناء المدن الجديده ينمى الاقتصاد القومى ويحل الكثير من المشاكل الاجتماعيه (ث.ع 1998)
- 18-Cultivating the desert and building new cities develop national economy and solve many social problems.  
- على كل فرد أن يشارك فى تحمل المسؤوليه للتغلب على مشاكلنا الاقتصاديه والاجتماعيه والبيئيه (ث.ع )
- 19- Everyone should share in shouldering/bearing the responsibility to overcome our economic, social, and environmental problems.  
- تبذل الحكومة أقصى جهدها لإيجاد فرص عمل للشباب وبناء مساكن لهم (ث.ع )
- 20- The government is doing its best to provide/create/find job opportunities for the youth and build houses/set up buildings for them.  
- عام يأتى السياح الى مصر ليستمتعوا بالجو الجميل فى الشتاء (ث.ع 2000)
- 21- Every year tourists come to Egypt to enjoy the fine/beautiful weather in winter.  
- تعمل الدوله على رعايه الموهوبين وتنميه مواهبهم (ث.ع )
- 22- The state pays attention to talented people and develops their talents.  
- يقدم العلماء الجديد كل يوم لخدمه البشريه ( )
- 23- Every day, scientists offer something new for the welfare of mankind.

- ان هوابتى المفضله هي قراءه القصص الخياليه والاستماع الى الموسيقى ( ) (2001)
- 24- My favourite hobby is reading imaginary stories and listening to music. ( ) سيتغير العام
- 25- Next year the shape and content of the school book will be changed/will change. ( ) معرفه والابتكار هما قاعدتا التقدم فى
- 26- Knowledge and innovation/inventiveness are the two bases of progress in the future. ( ) ان الخيال العلمى عاده ما يكون محاوله جاده للكتابه عن شكل الحياه فى المستقبل او فى عالم اخر (ث.ع) (2002)
- 27- Science fiction is normally/usually a serious attempt to write about the form of life/how life would be in the future. ( ) تتأثر السياحه تأثرا كبيرا بالاحداث الجاريه فى العالم ( ) (2003)
- 28- Tourism is greatly affected by the current events in the world. ( ) تولى الحكومه اهتماما كبيرا لإقامه المشروعات فى توشكى والوادي الجديد ( ) (2003)
- 29- The government gives due care to/pays great attention to carrying put projects and the New Valley. ( ) الحضاره تزدهر
- 30- Civilization flourishes better in peace times/times of peace. ( ) يجب ان يلتحق الطالب بالكلية التى تناسب مواهبه وقدراته ( ) (2004)
- 31- A student should join the faculty which suits his talents/gifts and abilities. ( ) يجب ان نستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثه فى جميع مجالات الحياه وخاصه الانتاج (ث.ع) (2004)
- 32- Modern technology should be used in all fields/aspects of life especially in the field of production. ( ) ان الجهود التى تبذل من اجل تحسين الصحه لايمكن ان تتم بنجاح الا بتعاون الافراد مع الحكومه (ث.ع) (2004)
- 33- The efforts exerted to improve health can't be successively achieved unless the individuals cooperate with the government. ( ) العامه فى كل مكان لتشجيع افراد الاسره على القراءه (ث. )
- 34- Public libraries are built/established/constructed/set up everywhere to encourage the members of the family/the family members to read. ( ) لقد اصبح متاحا لكل طالب اقتناء جهاز حاسب ( ) . )
- 35- It has become available for every student to get/own a personal computer. ( ) يجب ان يعرف العالم بأسره ان مصر بلد محب للسلام وضد الارهاب ( ) (2005)
- 36- The whole world must/ought to know that Egypt is a peace-loving country and against terrorism. ( ) لقد تقدمت جراحه زراعه القلب فى مصر تقدما ملحوظا ( )
- 37- Heart transplant surgery has remarkably developed in Egypt. ( ) تدعو الديانات السماويه كلها الى الحب
- 38- All heavenly religions call for love, peace, tolerance and rejecting violence. ( ) لقد وهب الله مصر الكثير من الاماكن السياحيه الجذابه والطقس الرائع ( )
- 39- God has gifted Egypt with lots of/many/several/numerous attractive tourist places and wonderful weather. ( ) يستخدم الطلاب المصريون أجهزه الكمبيوتر فى مدارسهم وسيكون لذلك أثره العظيم فى تقدم مصر (ث.ع )
- 40- Egyptian students use computers at their schools. This will have a great effect on the progress of Egypt. ( ) من حقه ان تعبر عن رأيك بحريه ولكن يجب ان تحترم رأى الآخرين (ث. )
- 41- It is your right to/You have the right to express your opinion freely, but you must/ought to respect the others. ( ) يجب أن نستفيد من تجارب الآخرين فى الصناعه والتكنولوجيا (ث. ) (2007)
- 42- We should benefit from/make use of the experiences of others in industry and technology. ( ) تحذر الدوله الشباب دانما من الهجره غير الشرعيه لتجنب التعرض للمخاطر ( ) (2007)
- 43- The state always warns young people against illegal immigration to avoid dangers/risks. ( ) والمفكرين العرب تأثير كبير على الثقافه الغربيه ( )
- 44- Arab scientists had a great influence/effect on western culture. ( ) نحن نعيش الآن عصر الاتصالات الذى جعل العالم ( ) . )
- 45- We live in the age of communications which has made the world an open one/world. ( ) يجب على الوالدين توجييه ورعايه ابناءهم ليواصلوا رحله الحياه بأمان (ث. ) (2008)
- 46- Parents should care for their children and guide them to continue the journey of life safely. ( ) الأسعار المرتفعه ونقص الطعام هما المشكلتين الرئيسيتين التى تعانى منهما كل دول العالم ( ) (2008)
- 47- High prices and lack of food are two major/the most two serious problems that all world countries suffer from. ( ) تشغل قضيه حقوق الإنسان الآن الاهتمام الرئيسى لمنظمات عالميه مختلفه ( )
- 48- The issue/case of human rights receives great attention/interest from different international organizations. ( )

**ARAB REPUBLIC OF EGYPT**  
**Ministry of Education**  
**General Secondary Education Certificate Examination, 2011**  
**[Second Stage - First Session]**

First Foreign Language: ENGLISH (2)

Time: 3 Hours

**A- Language Functions**

**1) Respond to each of the following situations:**

- 1- Your younger brother is very busy. You would like to help him.
- 2- A classmate asks you why you enjoy playing sports. Name one reason.
- 3- Someone asks you the time of the next train to Aswan.
- 4- Your sister asks you your opinion about the importance of e-books.

**2) Mention the place, speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:**

- 1- A: Well, your application has been accepted.  
 B: Wow! That's great! When can I start?  
 A: Next Sunday. You'll be working at the Garden City branch.

Place: .....
Speaker A: .....
Speaker B: .....
Function: .....
Place: .....
Speaker A: .....
Speaker B: .....
Function: .....

- 2- A: I'd like to deposit this sum, please.  
 B: Sure. Just fill in this form.

**B- Vocabulary & Structure**

**3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 1- Samir has two sisters; .....of them are older than him.  
 a) neither                      b) none                      c) both                      d) each
- 2- The astronauts are going to.....a space station in space.  
 a) build                      b) invent                      c) analyze                      d) arrest
- 3- Mona promised that she.....home tomorrow.  
 a) be                      b) would have been                      c) will have been                      d) will be
- 4- Arab countries shouldn't be in .....as they face the same challenges.  
 a) condition                      b) confidence                      c) harmony                      d) conflict
- 5- If you can't dictate your conditions, you .....negotiate.  
 a) will                      b) should                      c) need                      d) ought
- 6- A/An .....is a ceremony in which somebody officially becomes a king.  
 a) occasion                      b) debate                      c) organization                      d) coronation
- 7- I want to buy a new villa, so I .....save a lot of money.  
 a) am going to                      b) will                      c) going to                      d) will be
- 8- The medical condition of not being able to remember anything is called .....  
 a) megalomania                      b) insomnia                      c) amnesia                      d) phobia
- 9- The play is suggested to .....because the leading actor is ill.  
 a) being cancelled                      b) cancel                      c) have cancelled                      d) be cancelled
- 10- All the Egyptians should co-operate to save the country from any foreign .....  
 a) evaluation                      b) invasion                      c) excavation                      d) exploration
- 11- For centuries, the wind has been used.....ships.  
 a) to sailing                      b) sailed                      c) sailing                      d) to sail
- 12- There is a special .....in our kitchen for cutting vegetables.  
 a) budget                      b) bracelet                      c) gadget                      d) saw
- 13- Samia asked Hala .....she was doing anything the next day.  
 a) unless                      b) whether                      c) without                      d) except
- 14- Most creatures have some .....features.  
 a) common                      b) comment                      c) complain                      d) insulated
- 15- Had it rained so heavily, we .....floods.  
 a) wouldn't have had                      b) would have                      c) would have had                      d) may have
- 16- Mr. Ali is very ..... He wants to have a company of his own.  
 a) ambitious                      b) grateful                      c) graceful                      d) sociable

**4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:**

- 1- Peace knows to be constructive.
- 2- Splitting of cells produces nuclear power.
- 3- That's the boy which dog bit me last Friday.
- 4- Manufacturers reinvent paper, rather than throw it away.
- 5- There was a lake in the oil tank, so the car broke down.
- 6- Eighty kilometers is along way to travel using two liters of petrol.

**C- Reading**

**5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

What is love? The writer of "The Chemistry of Love" believes that falling in love is influenced by our brain chemistry. This connection between the way we feel and the way our bodies function is his main concern. Falling in love gives you extra energy. Your heart beats faster and you feel optimistic. Love meets our emotional needs, this makes everything look possible and rosy and we work better. The book says we are programmed at birth to produce endorphins when we are in close relationships. It is nature's way of keeping us together. When the relationship ends - or we are afraid it might end - production of endorphins stops.

What is remarkable in a relationship is the newness. You need newness, sharing and growth. The brain has to experience a change which creates excitement. That is why the great romances of literature are never between people who stay together.

**A) Give short answers to the following questions:**

- 1- Mention briefly the main idea of the passage.
- 2- Why does the world look rosy when you are in love?
- 3- What does the underlined word refer to?

Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:

- 4- Endorphins could be the name of a.....  
a) love story      b) chemical substance      c) part of the brain      d) sort of literature
- 5- According to the passage, everlasting love.....  
a) must lead to marriage      b) makes you pessimistic  
c) uses up a lot of your energy      d) is determined by inner chemistry

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Some editors of newspapers and magazines often go to extremes to provide their readers with unimportant facts and statistics. Once, a journalist was instructed to write an article on a new president's palace. When the article arrived, the editor read the first sentence and refused to publish it. The article began: "Hundreds of steps lead to the high wall which surrounds the president's palace." The editor at once sent a telegram telling the journalist to find out the exact number of steps and the height of the wall.

The journalist set out to obtain these important facts. But he took a long time to send them and the editor got impatient. In another telegram he said if he didn't reply soon, he would be fired. A week later, the editor was informed that the poor man had been arrested and sent to prison.

A) Give short answers to the following questions:

- 1- Who arrested the journalist?  
2- Why was the editor impatient?  
3- Where was the journalist asked to go?

Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:

- 4- The underlined word refers to the.....  
a) sentence      b) telegram      c) article      d) palace
- 5- To be 'fired' here means to be.....  
a) shot with a gun      b) dismissed      c) set on fire      d) promoted

D- Writing

8) Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

How to share in the progress of our country  
Translation

9) A. Translate into Arabic:

To enjoy the quality of being right and fair, you should have justice. It is one of the basic values in all social systems. It is also recommended by all religions and called for by all prophets.

B. Translate into English:

- لقد وضعت مصر اول لبنة في صرح الديموقراطية الحقيقية يوم  
- يرى الكثيرون ان العولمة تخدم الدول الغنية على حساب الدول الفقيرة .

The answer

1] Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1) Can I help you?/ Is there anything I can do to help?/Would you like me to help you?  
2) It keeps me fit./I like being/practicing with my friends.  
3) I think it leaves at .....

4) I think they are/will be very important in the future./ I think they will help save the environment.

2) Mention the place, speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Place: Company / factory .....etc.      S. A: employer/manager/ interviewer      S. B: applicant

Function: giving and asking for information

2- Place: Bank/post office      S. A: client/customer      S. B: banker/clerk

Function: request and give instructions

( Any other reasonable answers are accepted )

- 3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:  
1- both      2- build      3- will be      4- conflict      5- should      6-coronation  
7-am going to      8-amensia      9-be cancelled      10-invasion      11-to sail  
12-gadget      13-whether      14-common      15- would have had      16- ambitious

4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

- 1) knows – is known      2) cells – atoms      3) which – whose  
4) reinvent – recycle      5) lake – a leak      6) along – a long

5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

- 1- The connection between the way we feel and the way our bodies function/ love/ The chemistry of love  
2- because love gives extra energy and we feel optimistic.  
3-It refers to; love meets our emotional needs / love  
4- b) chemical substance      5- d) is determined by inner chemistry

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

- 1- The guards of the (president's) palace.  
2- Because the journalist didn't send important facts about the palace./because the journalist took a long time to send important facts about the palace.  
3- ..to the new president's palace.  
4- c) article      5- d)dismissed

9) A. Translate into Arabic:

لكي تتسم (تتصف/تتمتع) بالحق والعدل ، يجب ان تتوافر لديك (عندك/فيك) العدالة. فهي احدي القيم الاساسية في جميع (كل) الانظمة (النظم) الاجتماعية. كما ان جميع (كل) الاديان اوصت بها ونادى بها (دعا اليها) جميع (كل) الانبياء (الرسل)

B. Translate into English:

- 1- Egypt put / has put the first brick (block) in the building (establishment/structure) of true (real) democracy on the 19th of March.  
2- Many/A lot of people see (think/believe/view) that globalization serves (helps) the rich countries at the expense of the poor countries (ones).

(Any other reasonable answers are accepted)

**A- Language Functions**

**1) Respond to each of the following situations:**

- 1- A tourist wants to visit some places of interest in Egypt.
- 2- A friend asks about your plans for the next holiday.
- 3- Your father wants to know your opinion about the TV serials.
- 4- The teacher asks Samia which language skill she would like to improve.

**2-Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:**

1- A: What do you think this word means?

B: Generous?

A: Well done.

2- A: How much is this cream?

B: Only LE. 12.

A: Here you are. How often should I use it?

B: Once before bedtime and once more in the morning.

Place: .....
Speaker A: .....
Speaker B: .....
Function: .....
Place: .....
Speaker A: .....
Speaker B: .....
Function: .....

**B- Vocabulary & Structure**

**3) Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:**

- 1- In 1954, the government decided .....the High Dam.
  - a) built
  - b) building
  - c) to build
  - d) had built
- 2- July 2010 was the 41<sup>st</sup> .....of man's first landing on the moon.
  - a) anniversary
  - b) anonymous
  - c) anomalous
  - d) advisory
- 3- Yehia Haqqi .....of as the father of the Egyptian modern short story and novel.
  - a) still is thinking
  - b) still is thought
  - c) is still thought
  - d) is still thinking
- 4- .....is the entertainment that helps people to forget about their worries.
  - a) Euphemism
  - b) Escapism
  - c) Publication
  - d) Presentation
- 5- Monira has just told Amira that they .....to their friend's wedding tonight.
  - a) would go
  - b) have gone
  - c) were going
  - d) are going
- 6 - A/An .....is a set of books dealing with every branch of human knowledge.
  - a) encyclopedia
  - b) brochure
  - c) literature
  - d) anti-media
- 7- .....his old age, my uncle is very energetic.
  - a) Although
  - b) Despite
  - c) Because of
  - d) In spite of
- 8- Lightning is a natural, but dangerous .....
  - a) sight
  - b) view
  - c) phenomenon
  - d) eclipse
- 9- Name the actor .....plays Salah El Deen.
  - a) which
  - b) whose
  - c) whom
  - d) who
- 10- I think that the new skills in this course will make you more .....
  - a) employment
  - b) employer
  - c) unemployed
  - d) employable
- 11- I wish I .....my time last weekend.
  - a) didn't waste
  - b) hadn't wasted
  - c) wasted
  - d) had wasted
- 12- A good director is the one who .....his employees' efforts.
  - a) neglects
  - b) degrades
  - c) communicates
  - d) appreciates
- 13- I traveled by train, but I .....by car.
  - a) might have travelled
  - b) could travel
  - c) could have travelled
  - d) can travel
- 14- Many teenagers think that they have the .....to understand life properly.
  - a) maturity
  - b) mortality
  - c) majority
  - d) morality
- 15- It began to rain and there were no taxis. At last I .....arrive home.
  - a) was able to
  - b) couldn't
  - c) wasn't able to
  - d) managed
- 16- Folk songs were made up to describe important .....events.
  - a) historian
  - b) historic
  - c) history
  - d) historical

**4-Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:**

- 1- Most girls I know like music.
- 2- A space job can take several years.
- 3- Ten minutes are not long for you to wait for the train.
- 4- Teachers and supervisors belong to the teaching confession.
- 5- He sends to prison for his crime.
- 6- The winners feel ashamed when they receive medals

**C- Reading**

**5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

A scientific principle is often understood long before it is made into an invention. This was the case with the power of steam and steam engines, but not with laser. The word laser stands for Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation. Simply laser is a device that produces a very strong light called coherent light or laser beam. The light derived from electric bulbs or the sun - incoherent light - moves in all directions. Laser beam moves in only one direction and is much stronger.

Laser uses are countless. One of its earliest uses was measuring distances and speeds and it was amazingly accurate. For example, the exact speed of light was determined to be 186, 282. 397 miles per second. Now laser is used in the military field, surgery, factories, supermarkets, telephone work, video disc players and so many others. The laser can truly become the light of the 21st century.

**A. Give short answers to the following questions:**

- 1- Prove that laser is a very accurate device.
- 2- What does the underlined word refer to?
- 3- Laser light is different from the familiar light. Explain.

**B. Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:**

- 4- Laser is used in video disc players to .....

- a) establish exhibitions      b) show pictures on TV      c) record sound waves      d) publish magazines

5- .....is more concentrated than electric light.

- a) Laser beam      b) Incoherent light      c) Sun beam      d) Speed of light

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What does it mean to be lucky? It commonly means someone who gets something valuable without really trying, someone who is in the right place at the right time. The person who buys a winning lottery ticket or who discovers a lost painting by a famous painter - these are lucky people. Yet, luck does not guarantee happiness.

Accepting ourselves exactly as we are at this present moment provides the courage to move forward. Believing that all our choices in the past were the best we could have made frees us from regret. It also reinforces our belief that we are as good as we can be now.

The best preparation for the future is self-acceptance in the present. Self-acceptance and trust in people are the foundations of confidence and courage. Added to action, they lead to more opportunities for unexpected events - which people call luck - that can enrich our lives.

A) Give short answers to the following questions:

- 1- Why is self-acceptance important?  
2- How can we best prepare for the future?  
3- What does the underlined word refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:

- 4- Trust in people .....  
a) leads to unexpected events      b) reminds us of the past  
c) means a good choice      d) leads to confidence and courage  
5- A person who.....is a lucky person.  
a) passes a final exam      b) breaks a record      c) runs into an old friend      d) buys a car of the latest model

#### D- Writing

8) Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

A day you will never forget

9) A. Translate into Arabic:

I am busy looking after thirty distributors in my area. Therefore, I continually contact them. I also attend conferences and do presentations to explain to clients about the industry.

B. Translate into English:

- علينا بترشيد استخدام المياه العذبة والإسناوجه الضمأ مستقبلا.  
- لكي تزدهر السدي - يجب أن يعتبر كل مصري نفسه مرشدا سياحياً.

#### The answer

1] Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1 ..... e.g. the Pyramids, the Sphinx, museums, the Citadel, temples ..... etc.  
2 ..... to share in cleaning ... / growing .... in my district ... / to go ..... / to spend ... . etc.  
3 ..... interesting / useful/boring / too long .... . etc.  
4 . ... .. listening / reading / speaking / writing / critical thinking ..... etc.

(Any other reasonable answers are accepted)

2) Mention the place, speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Place: classroom / school      Speaker A: teacher / supervisor      Speaker B: student / pupil

Function : asking for information and giving praise / congratulation / positive feedback

2- Place: pharmacy / chemist's      Speaker A: patient / customer / client

Speaker B: chemist 's / assistant      Function : asking for information and giving instructions

(Any other reasonable answers are accepted)

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c    2.a    3. c    4. b    5.d    6. a    7. b    8. c    9. d    10. d    11. b    12. d    13. c    14. a    15. a    16. d

4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

- 1- Most of the girls I know like music. OR: Most girls like music.  
2- A space mission can take several years.  
3- Ten minutes is not long for you to wait for the train.  
4- Teachers and supervisors belong to the teaching profession.  
5- He (will be / is being / is) sent to prison for his crime.  
6- The winners feel proud (pride / glad / pleased .. .) when they receive medals.

5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1- ... ..... the speed of light was determined to be 186, 282. 397 miles per second.

2- ..... refers to laser's.

3- Laser moves in only one direction.( but ..... moves in all directions).

4- b) show pictures on TV      5- a) Laser beam

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1- ..... because it frees us from regret and reinforces our belief that we are as good as we can be now.

2.....through (by) self-acceptance (and t rust in people).

3...refers to self-acceptance, trust in people and action. OR: self-acceptance and t rust in people

4d) leads to confidence and courage

5- c) runs into an old friend

9d) A. Translate into Arabic:

انني مشغول (منشغل) بالاهتمام بـ (الإشراف علي / الاعتناء بـ / توجيه) ثلاثين موزعا في منطقتي (الحي الذي أسكنه) ولذلك فاني علي اتصال مستمر (دائم) (تواصل مستمر) بهم. كما انني احضر (اشهد) مؤتمرات واقوم بعرض (ايضاح) بيانات عملية لتقديم معلومات للعملاء (الزبائن)

B. Translate into English:

1- We have to (must / should / ought to) rationalize (cut down / economize on / minimize) using fresh (pure / drinkable / clean / potable) water, or (otherwise) we will (may / might) face (have / encounter) thrust (thirst) in the future (in the coming /following days).

2~ In order for tourism to flourish (In order to have / make tourism flourish / .. to get tourism to flourish), every Egyptian (Egyptian citizen / individual) should consider him/herself as a tourist guide (should act as a tourist guide) .

(Any other reasonable answers are accepted)

**A- Language Functions**

**1- Respond to each of the following situations:**

- 1- You ask your friend doctor's advice how to keep fit.
- 2- A pen friend asks you about the places of interest in Egypt.
- 3- Your brother got a good job at a big company.
- 4- You suggest going to the theatre at the weekend.

**2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language functions in each of the following two mini-dialogues:**

1- A: I'd like to book a return ticket to Aswan.

B: Here you are. Platform No. 5. Have a good trip.

A: Thank you.

Place: .....  
Speaker A: .....  
Speaker B: .....  
Function: .....

2- A: I have a severe headache what should I do now?

B: Take this medicine, regularly. And you have to take some rest.

A: Thank you.

Place: .....  
Speaker A: .....  
Speaker B: .....  
Function: .....

**B- Vocabulary and structure**

**3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1) The moon has less .....than the earth. So you could jump much higher there.

- a) power                      b) energy                      c) gravity                      d) strength

2) .....he understand the lesson if he read the summary?

- a) Will                      b) Did                      c) Can                      d) Would

3) The prisoner of Zenda .....in the nineteenth-century.

- a) took part                      b) took run                      c) took place                      d) took form

4) Ali .....travelling by sea.

- a) used to                      b) using to                      c) is used to                      d) uses to

5) Modern .....are the tall towers which are built where there is a lot of wind.

- a) wastes                      b) wind turbines                      c) fossil fuels                      d) hydroelectric

6) How .....information have you got from the story?

- a) many                      b) much                      c) lots                      d) different

7) This nice story .....by Taha Hussein.

- a) is written                      b) writes                      c) wrote                      d) was written

8) Yehia Haqqi graduated in law and worked for a short time as a .....

- a) lawyer                      b) diplomat                      c) sailor                      d) journalist

9) It's a month .....Hind last visited her uncle.

- a) for                      b) since                      c) at                      d) in

10) The .....are the parts of trees that grow under the ground and find water.

- a) branch                      b) bark                      c) rings                      d) roots

11) He will catch the train .....coming in time.

- a) if                      b) in case of                      c) unless                      d) in spite of

12) The cover of the book is made of .....

- a) rubber                      b) glass                      c) wood                      d) cardboard

13) The teacher asked Ahmed .....all the way on foot.

- a) why he came                      b) if did he come                      c) why would he come                      d) if does he come

14) .....makes light shine on something.

- a) Bass                      b) Cliff                      c) illuminate                      d) Carve

15) They left ten minutes ago, so they .....arrived by now. It's not far.

- a) must                      b) must have                      c) can't have                      d) have

16) He did nothing wrong. He's .....

- a) suspect                      b) guilty                      c) innocent                      d) sensible

**4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:**

- 1) All scientists are interested in space.
- 2) My brother had a good educated. He went to one of the best universities.
- 3) Despite she is clever, Mona fell in the final exam.
- 4) I went to the university to buy some medicine.
- 5) Before you go to London, you should practice to speak English.
- 6) My father is a good tennis playing.

**C- Reading Comprehension**

**5- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Amy Tan is a Chinese American writer. She writes about the uses of second generation Chinese American. She was born in California in 1952, several years after brother and father immigrated to San Francisco from china. Her father, John, was a successful engineer. When Amy was eight, her essay, "What the Library Means to Me" won first prize. Her father died in 1967 from brain trouble as her brother. Tan has written several novels including "The Joy Luck Club", published in 1989. This novel has been translated into 15 languages, "The Kitchen God's Wife" and "Saving Fish from Drowning". These deal with the difficulties mothers and daughters have in truly understanding one another. She also wrote a collection of non-fiction essays entitled the opposite of Fate. Tan lived in New York with her husband, a lawyer whom she met and married in 1974. Tan evolved her bachelor's and master's degrees in English and linguistics.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1) Where were Amy Tan's parents born?
- 2) What did she do when she was eight?
- 3) How did her father meet his end?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4) Amy Tan was married when she was .....



11. The kids' bedroom .....upstairs on the 2nd floor  
 a) it is                      b) are                      c) there are                      d) is
12. Dr. Zewail is more than just a Nobel Prize winner; he's a/an .....in chemistry.  
 a) investor                      b) explorer                      c) pioneer                      d) politician
13. Ahmed asked me where .....the day before.  
 a) I had gone                      b) I went                      c) had I gone                      d) did I go
14. ....not only study storms but they also follow and understand them.  
 a) Wind followers                      b) Storm chasers  
 c) Weather forecasters                      d) Climate researchers
15. It .....very windy during the night. There are leaves all over the ground.  
 a) must have been                      b) must be                      c) can't have been                      d) can't be
16. The company .....training courses for its employees.  
 a) qualifies                      b) provides                      c) promote                      d) practises

4. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly: [6 marks]

1. The more people want to do-something, the cheapest it will become.
2. Hassan is a football enthusiastic; he plays and watches football all the time
3. If she had more information about Hany's situation, she helped him.
4. Greenmail is the act of forcing a person to pay money under threat.
5. Your face looks familiar. Haven't I seen you everywhere before?
6. After the criminal was arrested, he was sent to prison for death.

#### C- Reading

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: [5 marks]

Have you ever wondered how you would grasp the information taught in class? Our minds and bodies gather information in various ways. Then our minds process that information, organizing it and making connection to things we already know. This process can also work differently: do we think in pictures or words? Do we remember details or the big picture? To sum up, people have different learning styles.

Psychologists have identified some basic learning styles: the linguistic type learns by using language skills: listening, reading, speaking and writing. Logical refers to people who learn by applying scientific principles. The visual type learns by seeing while musical people learn well when information is presented through music. The next type learns best by movement and physical activities. Finally, the intrapersonal learners associate new information directly with their own experiences while the interpersonal type learns well by working with others.

A. Give short answers to the following questions:

- 1) What is the main idea of the passage?
- 2) Which type of learners are you? Why?
- 3) How many learning styles are mentioned in the passage?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- According to the passage, an effective teacher.....  
 a) uses one teaching style.                      b) makes connections between mind and body.  
 c) combines more than one teaching methods.                      d) discourages pupils to think critically.

5- The underlined word 'grasp' means .....

- a) undertake                      b) follow                      c) misuse                      d) understand

6. Read the following passage then answer the questions: [5 marks]

Brain drain, the action of having highly skilled and educated people leaving their country to work abroad, has become one of the developing countries' concerns. Many of them are heading for more developed countries, searching for higher wages and better working conditions.

What makes those educated people leave their countries should be seriously considered and a *distinction* between push and pull factors must be made. The push factors include low wages and lack of satisfactory lifestyle. Social and economic unrest may also be determining causes. The pull factors, however, include intellectual freedom and enough money for research.

Brain drain has undesirable effects on the sending countries. It reduces the number of creative people in developing countries. Similarly, with more investments abroad, these countries are missing an opportunity of wealth creation. This also has negative results on employment.

A. Give short answers to the following questions:

- 1) Are you for or against the emigration of scientists? Why?
- 2) Mention one way to solve the brain drain problem.
- 3) What does the underlined word 'them' refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- According to the passage, brain drain .....in the sending countries.  
 a) increases the number of skilled people                      b) complicates the unemployment problem  
 c) adds to the chalices of wealth creation                      d) develops working conditions

5- The word '*distinction*' may be replaced by .....

- a) similarity                      b) difference                      c) relation                      d) likeliness

#### D- Writing

8. Write a paragraph of about 100 words about [6 marks]

"Do today's young people show enough respect towards older people?"

9. A. Translate into Arabic: [3 marks]

Sports reinforce values important to society, like honest competition and teamwork. "There is no I in TEAM" is a good sports saying. It teaches us that success is achieved by putting the group

above individual glory.  
**B. Translate into English:**

[2 marks]

ثبت علمياً أن الشيكولاته لها بعض الفوائد الصحية للقلب .  
الماء أصل الحياة فلا تفسد البيئة بتلويث مياه النيل .

**Model answer**

**1-Respond to the following situations:**

- 1) My father has promised to buy me a lap top after finishing my exams.
- 2) You mustn't do that. It's so dangerous. / Fast cars are coming.
- 3) You should wear a life-jacket as a safety precaution.
- 4) Can I sit here, please? / Is it a vacant seat?

(OR any reasonable answer)

**2-Places and Speakers:**

**1-Place:** Jewellery shop / Jeweller's **Speaker A:** Customer

**Speaker B:** Jeweller

**Function:** Making a request and asking for preference.

**2-Place:** On the beach **Speaker A:** Father **Speaker B:** Son **Function:** Asking for and giving information

(OR any reasonable answer)

**3-Choose**

1-c) although

2-b) recuperate

3-c) will be published

4-d) complained

5-a) who appeared

6-d) landmarks

7-c) to ask

8-b) depression

9-a) hadn't said

10-a) fictional

11-d) is

12-c) pioneer

13-a) I had gone

14-b) storm chasers

15-a) must have been

16-b) provides

**4-Find the mistake:**

1-the cheapest the cheaper

2-enthusiastic

enthusiast

3- helped

would / could help

4-Greenmail Blackmail/Blackmailing

5- everywhere

somewhere/anywhere

6- death life

**5-Comprehension:**

1. The different types of learning styles.

2. I belong to the visual type because I learn by seeing.

3. There are seven learning styles in the passage.

4. c) combines more than one teaching method.

5. d) understand

**6-Comprehension:**

1. I am against the emigration of scientists because our country needs these scientists to make more progress. (Any reasonable answer)

2. We should provide higher wages (intellectual freedom – more money for research).

3. "them" refers to highly skilled and educated people leaving their country

4. b) complicates the unemployment problem.

5. b) difference.

**Translate into Arabic:**

ان الرياضة تعزز القيم الهامة للمجتمع، كالمنافسة الشريفة والعمل الجماعي، وهناك مقولة رائعة في الرياضة هي: "ليس هناك فريق". وهي تعلمنا أن النجاح يتحقق عن طريق الجماعة فوق المصلحة الفردية.

**Translate into English:**

1) It has been scientifically proved that chocolate has some health benefits for the heart.

2) Water is the origin of life, so don't spoil the environment by polluting the Nile water.

ARAB REPUBLIC OF EGYPT

Ministry of Education

General Secondary Education Certificate Examination, 2012

[Second Stage – Second Session]

First Foreign Language: English (2)

Time: 3 hours

اللغة الاجنبية الاولى ( ) : [الانجليزية]

[ ]

تنبيه مهم: الاجابات المكررة عن اسئلة الاختيار من متعدد لن تقدر ويتم تقدير الاجاب

**A- Language Functions**

**1) Respond to each of the following situations:** [4 Marks]

1- Your brother is preparing to leave for the airport. Offer to give him a hand.

2- A friend is worried about an interview tomorrow. Suggest a way to make him/her feel better.

3- Your neighbour has been in hospital for a week. Express regret for not visiting him/her.

4- You arrive late for an appointment with your manager. Apologise and give a reason.

**2. Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-**

**dialogues: [4 marks]**

1- A: I'm tired of just sitting here!

B: Relax. The flight will depart within 40 minutes.

Place: .....

Speaker A: .....

Speaker B: .....

Function: .....

2- A: What do you think of the essay I wrote?

B: The first draft was not well-written.

A: What about the second draft?

B: It's much better.

Place: .....

Speaker A: .....

Speaker B: .....

Function: .....

**B- Vocabulary & Structure**

**3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d:** [8 marks]

1- Which model..... 250 kilometres per hour?

a) does go

b) goes

c) has gone

d) going

2- My cousin made a .....decision when he decided to give an hour a week to charity.

a) continuous

b) conventional

c) conscientious

d) confidential

3- Climate scientists ended their .....by agreeing that global warming is mainly man-made.

a) debates

b) diabetes

c) diagnosis

d) decades

- 4- It's more than 20 years ..... I travelled abroad.  
 a) while                      b) before                      c) when                      d) since
- 5- Though different in personality, Henry and his aunt get .....  
 a) out of                      b) on hard                      c) away with                      d) on well
- 6- Some drivers have a sat-nav system in their cars to help them find their best .....  
 a) root                      b) routine                      c) route                      d) rout
- 7- Ali .....for work for over a year before he finally got a job.  
 a) has been looking                      b) had looked                      c) had been looking                      d) has looked
- 8- .....seeing the road accident, the motorists drove more carefully.  
 a) On                      b) Without                      c) Despite                      d) Over
- 9- It is .....for Egyptians to lose one of their unique monuments.  
 a) thinkable                      b) imaginable                      c) unthinkable                      d) understandable
- 10- Ramy has a broken arm; he .....off his bicycle in the race.  
 a) can't fall                      b) might fall                      c) must have fallen                      d) can't have fallen
- 11- I'm going to .....some information about space invasion from the internet.  
 a) download                      b) overload                      c) upload                      d) unload
- 12- A well-known .....is opening a new gym downtown soon.  
 a) celerity                      b) certification                      c) celebration                      d) celebrity
- 13- To get a .....you have to make outstanding achievements.  
 a) motion                      b) mission                      c) permission                      d) promotion
- 14- .....are objects that explode with a coloured light during festivals.  
 a) Artworks                      b) Fireworks                      c) Frameworks                      d) Glassworks
- 15- From the medical report, she .....to have suffered from amnesia.  
 a) believed                      b) is believed                      c) is believing                      d) believes
- 16- Mahmoud promised he would not tell anyone what .....said.  
 a) had I                      b) I had                      c) have I                      d) I have

4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly: [6 marks]

- 1- A precision moved slowly towards the king's palace.
- 2- If you put a long bar of steel in water, will it sink?
- 3- The job of accountants is to help people with their fiancées.
- 4- Amir hopes winning a prize for his latest short stories collection.
- 5- By my 50th birthday, I will be in my current profession for over 20 years.
- 6- The little boy was hiding behind a tree and thought he was visible.

#### C- Reading

5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: [5 marks]

The ancient Egyptians are among the first early civilizations to learn how to grow roses. In 1888, two-thousand-year-old roses were found in ancient Egyptian graves. The discovery suggested roses were an important part of the burial ceremonies, which took place when an important person died. The roses found in the tombs are thought to be the oldest preserved flowers ever found in the entire world. They must have been cut and dried before opening to remain undamaged. On careful examination, it was discovered that the petals themselves were hardly damaged.

Egypt's expertise in mass-cultivation of roses in early times led to the flowers becoming an important export product. At the height of the Roman Empire, Egypt exported enormous quantities of the blooms to the Roman courts. Wealthy Romans loved to indulge in the beautiful colours and smells of roses and they would strew the floors of their main halls with layers of rose petals.

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- What is the main idea of the passage?
- 2- How did the Ancient Egyptians preserve the roses?
- 3- From the passage, prove that the ancient Romans loved roses.

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- The roses found in the tombs were .....  
 a) hardly saved                      b) greatly damaged                      c) undamaged                      d) hydrated
- 5- The underlined word 'They' refer to .....  
 a) roses                      b) petals                      c) tombs                      d) ceremonies

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: [5 marks]

As cities become more crowded, workers often have to move farther away from their offices to find affordable housing in desirable neighbourhoods. Sometimes they have to commute, that is to travel an hour or more to work and back, and endure heavy traffic. One popular solution to the difficult daily travel is telecommuting, which involves working from home and communicating with one's employer by phone, fax, or e-mail.

Changing technology makes telecommuting increasingly easy and popular. Some people work at home full time, while others go into the office one or two days and work at home the rest of the week. Telecommuting has many advantages. Besides saving people from the stressful traffic, it allows for more flexibility in the workplace.

Telecommuters can plan their own timetables; and they can work from anywhere. Often, people with children like to telecommute because it means building a work plan around family demands and duties.

A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- Are you for or against telecommuting? Why/Why not?
- 2- Why do many people have to search for houses in remote areas?

3- How can telecommuting solve the traffic problem?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- According to the passage, unless you have a computer, you .....  
a) may have a busy schedule. b) won't be able to telecommute.  
c) will be able to work from home. d) can't have desirable work conditions.
- 5- While some people work at home the whole week; others are .....employees.  
a) full time b) sometime c) halftime d) part time

**D- Writing**

8) Write a paragraph of about 100 words about the following: [6 marks]

"If you could go back to some time and place in the past, when and where would you go?"

9) Translation [5 marks]

9) A. Translate into Arabic:

Being a good citizen requires a lot of civilized behaviour like helping the people in need. Imagine you were in their place! Wouldn't you like to have other people standing by your side?

B. Translate into English:

- ١- أفكر جدياً في التسجيل في دورة كمبيوتر بعد التخرج.  
٢- في بعض المنازل الحديثة تُستخدم طاقة الشمس في تسخين المياه.

**Model answer**

1) Respond to each of the following situations: [4 Marks]

1-Do you need any help? / Can I help you?

2-What / how about reading about the company? / Try to have enough sleep /..... .

3-I wish I had visited him. / . ....

4-I'm sorry for being late. There was a traffic jam/the car broke down / ..... etc.

2. Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues: [4 marks]

1-Place: airport/on the plane

Speaker A: traveller / passenger

Speaker B: a person in charge (official in the airport/ air hostess)

Function: complaint and response

2-Place: school/class university hall

Speaker A: student

Speaker B: teacher / professor / ..... .

Function: asking for and giving opinion

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d: [8 marks]

- 1- b) goes 2-c) conscientious 3-a) debates 4-d) since 5- d) on well 6-c) route  
7-c) had been looking 8-a) On 9-c) unthinkable 10-c) must have fallen 11-a) download  
12-d) celebrity 13-d) promotion 14-b) Fireworks 15-b) is believed 16-b) I had

4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly: [6 marks]

1- precision – procession 2- will it sink - does it sink 3- fiancées – finances

4- winning - to win 5- will be - will have been 6-visible - invisible

5. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: [5 marks]

1-Answers will vary according to the students' opinions.

2-They cut and dried them before opening.

3-They imported enormous quantities of the blooms to their courts/Wealthy Romans loved to indulge in the beautiful colors and smells of the roses and they would strew the floors of their main halls with layers of rose petals.  
(Any reasonable answers are accepted)

4-c) undamaged

5-a) roses

6. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: [5 marks]

1-Answers will vary according to the students' opinions.

2-..... to find affordable housing / ..... ..

3-..... by reducing the number of cars in the streets /.....

(Any reasonable answers are accepted)

4- b) won't be able to telecommute

5-d) part time

9. A) Translate into Arabic: [3 marks]

- المواطنة الصالحة تتطلب قدراً كبيراً من السلوك المتحضر مثل معاونة من هم في شدة. فلو تخيلت أنك في مكانهم، أفلا تحب أن يقف الآخرون
- لكي تكون مواطناً صالحاً، يجب أن يكون سلوكك متحضرًا بالقدر الكافي لمساعدة المحتاجين. تخيل أنك في مكانهم (في مأزق)، ألا تحب أن يقف

B) Translate into English: [2 marks]

1-I think seriously about being enrolled in a computer course after graduation.

2-Some modern houses use solar energy to heat water.

Arab Republic of Egypt

Ministry of Education

Completion of Egyptian G.S.C.E in the Republic of Sudan, 2012

(First Session - Second Stage)

First Foreign Language: English (2)

Time: 3 hours

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

1- You do not understand why it goes dark at night. Ask someone to explain it.

- 2- A friend suggests that swimming is a good way to keep fit. State another way.  
 3- A friend suggests that you join a squash club together. Suggest something else.  
 4- Someone asks where your friend Ali is. You have not seen him for a long time. You are almost certain he is on holiday.

2-Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1- A: Excuse me, sir. The captain has asked everyone to return to their seats.

B: Does that mean we are going to land soon?

A: Yes, in about 15 minutes.

2- A: Have you seen Ahmed?

B: No, sir. He was at his desk on the phone a few minutes ago.

A: Isn't he there now?

B: No, maybe he has gone home already.

A: He cannot have gone home. He's preparing a report for me.

**B-Vocabulary and structure**

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- Don't worry. I'm sure .....them again soon.

- a) you see                      b) you're seeing                      c) you'll see                      d) you would see

2- Wanting friends is part of human .....

- a) nature                      b) conflict                      c) will                      d) life

3- They have just received this photo as an e-mail .....

- a) post                      b) attachment                      c) letter                      d) part

4- Lightening is a dangerous but natural .....

- a) sight                      b) response                      c) eclipse                      d) phenomenon

5- She didn't see her brother yesterday. He .....the flat very early.

- a) must have left                      b) must leave                      c) can't have left                      d) can't leave

6- He lost the book .....him last week.

- a) which lent                      b) which I lent it                      c) who lent                      d) I lent

7- The quickest way for Sawsan to get to school is to .....a train.

- a) go                      b) bring                      c) come                      d) take

8- That plant has been .....so that it gets lots of light.

- a) explored                      b) brought up                      c) positioned                      d) set

9- Taha's mother asked him where .....

- a) he had been                      b) had he been                      c) has he been                      d) he has been

10- She promised .....me as soon as the plane lands.

- a) to phone                      b) phoned                      c) would phone                      d) phones

11- Is there anyone .....on our door? I'll see who it is.

- a) hitting                      b) knocking                      c) smashing                      d) depending

12- Their uncle is a scientist. He's .....research into new forms of energy.

- a) making                      b) taking                      c) getting                      d) doing

13- If you .....earlier, you wouldn't have missed the train.

- a) had left                      b) leave                      c) would have left                      d) left

14- I wish she .....the test successfully last year.

- a) would pass                      b) could pass                      c) had passed                      d) passes

15- I'm hot today. How about .....to the beach?

- a) gone                      b) going                      c) went                      d) go

16- Accidents .....more frequently when the roads are busy.

- a) take part                      b) come in                      c) cause                      d) occur

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1-Let's try to find them, did I?

2-Teachers and supervisors belong to the teaching confusion.

3- He asked me if he had saw his newspaper.

4- The statue of Ramses II is a very important Ancient Egyptian magnet.

5- People can waste lots of money by using the underground.

6- I have been learning English since 2 years.

5-Read the following passage, then answer the questions:-

Flowers produce a fine powder called pollen, which is carried by the wind or by insects to other flowers of the same type so that they can produce seeds. Pollination, the carrying of pollen from one flower to another, is necessary for the reproduction of plants and for the production of food. Scientists estimate that one third of our food depends on insects, mostly bees, for pollination.

But in recent years, there has been a big drop in the populations of pollinators worldwide. There are several reasons. The use of pesticides has had the side effect of killing pollinators. Air pollution prevents insects from smelling and finding flowers, which they need for food. Diseases are killing many insects. Growing cities are destroying the environments where pollinators live. Recently, shortages of fruit and vegetables in India were blamed on the loss of pollinators. Clearly, it is important that we find solutions quickly.

A) Give short answers to the following questions:

1- What is a pollinator?

2- Is pollen only carried by insects? Explain.

3- Why has the number of pollinators dropped?

B) Choose the best answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Which is the best title for this text?

- a) The Importance of Bees                      b) Pollinators in India  
 c) The Loss of Pollinators                      d) Where Have All the Flowers Gone?

5- How does air pollution affect pollination?

- a) Flowers can't make pollen.  
 b) Insects can't smell the flowers, so they can't find them.  
 c) Insects can't pollinate the flowers because they can't see them.

Place: .....

Speaker A: .....

Speaker B: .....

Function: .....

Place: .....

Speaker A: .....

Speaker B: .....

Function: .....

d) Pollution kills insects.

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Art does not just refer to paintings in a museum. There are many different kinds of art. Advertising and architecture are both kinds of art too, in my opinion, and they have an effect on our lives. Even people who are not interested in going to art galleries are still affected by these other kinds of art.

Posters and other forms of advertisements are all around us, especially in towns and cities, and we cannot help seeing them. If they are successful advertisements, they make us want to buy certain products. In addition, adverts often make the streets more colourful and attractive. We can say that different forms of art are all around us and have a big effect on our everyday life.

A. Give short answers to the following questions:

1- What kinds of art are mentioned in the passage?

2- Suggest a title for the passage.

3- How do successful advertisements affect us?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- Advertisements often make the streets more colourful .....

a) ugly                      b) pleasing                      c) silly                      d) delicious

5- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to .....

a) advertisements                      b) paintings                      c) galleries                      d) kinds of art  
D- Writing

8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"The internet is one of the most recent inventions in our life."

E- Translation

9- A) Translation into Arabic:

Living things respond to changes in their environment. For example, if an object causes you pain, you respond by moving away from it. For protection, some animals change colour to hide in their surroundings.

B- Translate into English:

- يقال ان معظم الاشياء التي نستخدمها تأتي من الخشب.  
- كان يحيى حفي أحد رواد الأدب المصري الحديث والثقافة العربية.

General Secondary Education Certificate Examination, 2013

[Second Stage - First Session]

First Foreign Language: ENGLISH [ 2 ] Time: 3 Hours

A- Language Functions

1) Respond to each of the following situations: (4 marks)

1- Give advice to your friend who is going out while it is raining outside.

2- Your uncle was very sick last week. You regret not visiting him.

3- One of your sisters looks upset. You want to know if she has a problem.

4- A friend suggests that you go to the book fair next Friday. Suggest something else.

2) Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues: ( 4 marks)

1- A: Excuse me. I need an encyclopedia about Egyptian novelists.

B: You can find this on the shelf over there.

A: Thank you. Can I take it out?

B: I'm afraid you can't.

2- A: Does this tooth ache?

B: Not the upper tooth, but the lower one.

B- VOCABULARY & STRUCTURE (14 Marks)

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (8 marks)

1- The teaching .....requires good education and training.

a) proficient                      b) profile                      c) procession                      d) profession

2- My elder brother is a Nile TV channel..... whose job is to report news from London.

a) agent                      b) client                      c) correspondent                      d) representative

3- Military soldiers usually wear .....uniforms.

a) distinctive                      b) destructive                      c) detective                      d) distributive

4- If Mona had come ten minutes earlier, she .....her boss.

a) would meet                      b) would have met                      c) will meet                      d) meets

5- Naguib Mahfouz's books .....into many languages.

a) have translated                      b) had translated                      c) were translating                      d) have been translated

6- When we were children, we didn't have e-mails so we .....write letters.

a) must                      b) had to                      c) have to                      d) has to

7- Five litres of petrol .....not enough for the trip from Cairo to Alexandria.

a) is                      b) are                      c) were                      d) had

8- Dr. Aisha Abdelrahman used to go with her father to meetings at .....she learned to read and write.

a) which                      b) where                      c) who                      d) whom

9- The astronauts went on a space .....to replace a broken fuel pump.

a) tour                      b) suit                      c) station                      d) walk

10- At the beach, people's skin can become darker because they are exposed to ..... rays.

a) electromagnetic                      b) ultraviolet                      c) heat                      d) laser

11- Yehia Haqqi is one of the most .....writers in the Egyptian literature.

a) innocent                      b) influential                      c) medical                      d) scientific

12- Coal, oil, and gas are ....fuels, which have been formed under the ground millions of years ago.

a) energy                      b) electricity                      c) fossil                      d) waste

13- .....occurs when the moon disappears, and passes between the sun and the earth.

a) An eclipse                      b) Wind                      c) Thunder                      d) Lightening

14- We expect .....the English test this year.

a) pass                      b) to passing                      c) passing                      d) to pass

15- Salwa is penniless. She wishes she .....spent all her money yesterday.

- a) hasn't                                      b) hadn't                                      c) didn't                                      d) doesn't

16- It's my mother's birthday, ..... I want to buy her a present.

- a) because                                      b) although                                      c) despite                                      d) so

4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write it correctly: (6 marks)

- 1- He wanted to know how would I feel about working in Luxor.
- 2- When I have nothing to do, I feel really boring.
- 3- At night, bright lights always illustrate the front of the palace.
- 4- The doctor advised my aunt not to eat sweets because she is chronic.
- 5- Despite my grandfather is 72, he is still working.
- 6- Today, paper, plastic and glass can all be replaced to be used again.

**C) Reading (8 marks)**

5- Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (4marks)

Many people like to take part in extreme sports. These sports are thrilling but can be dangerous. They require skill and technique and a sense of adventure. Extreme sports started long ago. Hang-gliding, skydiving and hot-air ballooning are just three of the many extreme sports practised.

Hot-air Ballooning is recognised as a sport in 1960. The huge multicolour balloons have been made from nylon and are lifted into the sky by controlling the air inside the balloon. To make the balloon go higher, the balloon pilot blasts hot air inside the balloon. Bottled Propane gas is used to heat the air. This fuel can be turned off and on by the balloonist. To make the balloon descend, the air has to be left to cool. A basket, which holds the balloonist and passengers, is attached to the balloon by wires.

**A) Give short answers to the following questions:**

- 1- Do you like extreme sports? Why / Why not?
- 2- What does a balloonist do to lift or descend a balloon?
- 3- Why is hot-air ballooning one of the extreme sports?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- The air gets hot or cool by the.....  
a) skill                                      b) wires                                      c) balloonist                                      d) basket
- 5- According to the passage, the basket carries.....  
a) balloon pilot                                      b) passengers                                      c) pilot and passengers                                      d) multicolour balloons

6- Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (4 marks)

Many unusual weather phenomena include lightening, droughts, and floods. Lightening occurs when thunderstorms form in clouds. These contain drops of water and fragments of ice which rub and hit to form electricity which travels through the air causing lightning. The temperature of lightning can be hotter than that of the sun. Lightning is very dangerous. It may strike mountains, people, and buildings. It also causes trees to fall, or catch fires.

A drought occurs when not enough rain falls. It happens when weather is hot and water is quickly evaporated in dry areas of land. Droughts can cause loss of topsoil and damage of crops. They can result in famine, diseases and wildfires. Floods are formed when big waves are rolled on dry places. They occur when it rains more than the land can handle. Floods can make people drown and die, and may destroy many homes.

**A. Give short answers to the following questions:**

- 1- What causes droughts? Give two reasons.
- 2- Mention three effects of a drought on man and environment.
- 3- According to the passage, how is electricity formed?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- Floods are caused when.....  
a) dry areas of land roll                                      b) not enough rain falls  
c) people drown and die                                      d) land cannot absorb rain
- 5- The underlined word that refers to the.....  
a) lightening                                      b) temperature                                      c) air                                      d) electricity

**D- THE NOVEL (THE PRISONER OF ZENDA) (9 Marks)**

7) **A. Answer the following questions: (4 marks)**

- 1- What reason did Rassendyll give Princess Flavia for leaving Strelsau?
- 2- Why did Rassendyll kill Max Holf?
- 3- What did Sapt plan to do if the real king died?
- 4- Rassendyll and Sapt needed a permit to leave the city. Why?

**B. Read the following quotation and-then answer the questions: (3 marks)**

"It's good to meet your cousin! You must forgive me if I seemed surprised, as it isn't every day that you see your double!"

- 1- Who said this to whom?
- 2- Where was it said?
- 3- Why was the speaker surprised?

**C. Find the mistake in each sentence and correct it: (2 marks)**

- 1- Michael rides through the poor part of town without a close guard.
- 2- Rassendyll asked Strakencz to kill Flavia and not to allow any of the Duke's men to visit her.

**E-WRITING**

8) Write a paragraph of about 100 words about: (6 marks)

The different ways people can do to save energy

**F- TRANSLATION (5 Marks)**

9) **A. Translate into Arabic: (3marks)**

To make paper from wood, logs are broken into small pieces which are mixed with chemicals and then bleached. Water is removed from the mixture, which then passes through hot rollers to produce dry paper.

**B. Translate into English: (2marks)**

- تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية لتوليد الكهرباء في بعض محطات الطاقة العملاقة.  
- عفوا، هل يمكن ان ترشدني الى اقصر طريق للوصول الى ستاد القاهرة؟

Model answer

1) Respond to each of the following situations: [4 Marks]

- 1- You shouldn't go out. It is raining. / You should take an umbrella.
- 2- I wish I had visited my uncle. / - I regret not visiting my uncle.
- 3- What's the matter with you? Do you have a problem?
- 4- I'm not very keen. Why don't we go to Alex?

2) Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Place: a library                      Speaker A: a reader / a student                      Speaker B: a librarian

Function: a request

2- Place: a dentist's clinic                      Speaker A: dentist

Speaker B: a patient

Function: an inquiry

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, d: (8 marks) -

- 1- c) profession                      2-c) correspondent                      3-a) distinctive                      4- b) would have met
- 5-d) have been translated                      6-b) had to                      7- a) is                      8-a) which
- 9-d) walk                      10-b) ultraviolet                      11-b) influential                      12-c) fossil
- 13-a) an eclipse                      14-d) to pass                      15-b) hadn't                      16-d) so

4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write it correctly: (6 marks)

- 1- Would I ----- I would                      2- boring -----bored                      3-illustrate----- illuminate
- 4- chronic----- diabetic                      5- Despite ----- although                      6- replaced ----- recycled

5- Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (4marks)

- 1- I don't like extreme sports because they are very dangerous.
- 2- By controlling the air inside the balloon. To make the balloon go higher.....to make the balloon descend .....
- 3- Because it requires skills and techniques and a sense of adventure
- 4- balloonist                      5- pilot and passengers

6- Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (4 marks)

- 1- 1- When not enough rains fall.
- 2- When weather is hot and water is quickly evaporated in dry areas of land.
- 2- 1-Droughts can cause the loss of topsoil and damage the crops
- 2-they can result in famine diseases and wildfires.
- 3- The clouds which contain drops of water and fragments of ice which rub and hit to form electricity.
- 4- d- land cannot absorb rain                      5- b- the temperature

7) A. Answer the following questions: (4 marks)

- 1- He told her that he was going hunting as he was going to hunt a big animal (Michel).
- 2- As they were in a state of war. He did so to be safe.
- 3- He planned that Rassendyll would be king forever.
- 4- Because the city gate would be closed at this time of the day and no one was allowed to leave or enter without a permission.

B: Quotation

- 1- The real king to Rassendyll
- 2- It was said in the forest of Zenda
- 3- He was surprised as they looked identical.

C) 1- Michael -----Rassendyll.

2- Kill -----take care of/protect/guard/save.

9) A. Translate into Arabic: (3marks)

لصناعة الورق من الأخشاب يتم تكسير قطع الأشجار الي قطع صغيرة التي يتم خلطها بالمواد الكيميائية وبعد ذلك يتم تبييضها ويتم إزالة المياه من الخليط الذي يمر خلال بكرات ساخنة لإنتاج ورق جاف.

B. Translate into English: (2marks)

- 1- Solar energy is used to generate electricity in some massive/giant power stations.
- 2- Excuse me, could you tell me the shortest way to reach the Cairo stadium?

**General Secondary Education Certificate Examination, 2013**

[Second Session – Second Stage]

First Foreign Language: English (2)

Time: 3 hours

تنبيه مهم: الاجابات المكررة من اسئلة الاختيار من متعدد والصواب والخطا لن تقدر ويتم تقدير الاجابة الاولى فقط

**A- Language Functions**

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1- A friend asks you why you have such an expensive mobile. You have two reasons.
- 2- Persuade your brother to go to Alexandria to spend the summer vacations.
- 3- An American friend asks you how to celebrate Sham El-Nessim in Egypt.
- 4- Apologize to a friend who invited you to a birthday party you didn't go to.

2) Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1- A: Well, we're pleased with your application.

B: Thank you so much. When will I start?

A: First of August at Beni Sweif branch.

Place: .....

Speaker A: .....

Speaker B: .....

Function: .....

2- A: May I be of any help to you?

B: Could you give these notebooks to your classmates?

A: With pleasure. Are these our homework notebooks?

B: That's right. Yours was excellent.

Place: .....

Speaker A: .....

Speaker B: .....

Function: .....

**B: Vocabulary and Structure**

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d:

1- My friend is thinking of ..... on a finance course at the Business College.

a) applying

b) joining

c) enrolling

d) entering

- 2- He ..... a geologist when he leaves university. This is his plan.  
 a) will become                      b) is going to become                      c) is becoming                      d) becomes
- 3- Someone who travels daily to work from one place to another is a .....  
 a) consumer                      b) commuter                      c) competitor                      d) coordinator
- 4- ..... you work harder, you'll fail your exam.  
 a) If                      b) As                      c) When                      d) Unless
- 5- One cannot drive a car without a driving .....  
 a) seatbelt                      b) licence                      c) leisure                      d) safeguard
- 6- They suggested ..... for a picnic in the park.  
 a) to go                      b) goes                      c) has gone                      d) going
- 7- Although the twins are ....., their personalities are different.  
 a) same                      b) like                      c) common                      d) alike
- 8- If you had come five minutes later, I .....  
 a) would leave                      b) would have left                      c) leave                      d) will leave
- 9- Millions of people watched the rocket ..... on TV.  
 a) set off                      b) start                      c) launch                      d) eruption
- 10- I met the doctor ..... car was stolen last week.  
 a) who                      b) whom                      c) whose                      d) which
- 11- She is reading the ..... of Taha Hussein. He has a very interesting life.  
 a) biography                      b) blackmail                      c) ceremony                      d) celebration
- 12- Mona was tired yesterday because she ..... for the test all day.  
 a) had revised                      b) had been revising                      c) revised                      d) revising
- 13- The king took ..... of those who accused him of treason.  
 a) revenge                      b) treaty                      c) bravery                      d) confidence
- 14- Most furniture ..... of wood.  
 a) are made                      b) make                      c) is made                      d) makes
- 15- A ..... is a piece of equipment used to send out radio or television signals.  
 a) transaction                      b) transmitter                      c) transistor                      d) transplant
- 16- She didn't see her brother this morning. He ..... the flat very early.  
 a) must have left                      b) can't have left                      c) must leave                      d) can't leave

**4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:**

- 1- He is fast in English. He speaks it without stopping or making mistakes.
- 2- Huda is on a low-fat diet because she has lost a lot of weight.
- 3- How many time does the performance last?
- 4- Despite we ran fast, we missed the train.
- 5- At the gate of the university, students have to show their credit cards.
- 6- She phoned me but she wanted to know where we can meet.

**C- Reading**

**5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

From outer space, the earth looks like a blue ball. Since water covers three-fourths of its surface, blue is the colour we see most. White clouds wrap around the earth like a light blanket. The earth is shaped like a sphere, or a ball. It is 25,000 miles around. It would take more than a year to walk around the planet. A spaceship can fly around it in 90 minutes. Apollo Spaceship travelled to the moon in 1969, and its astronauts found no air, water, plants or animals there.

The sun is the closest star to the earth. Its burning gases are so hot that they warm the earth from 93 million miles away. Even though the sun is always shining, the night on earth is dark. We see light when the earth faces the sun, but when the earth turns away from the sun, it faces the darkness of space.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What causes darkness on the earth?
- 2- Why do we see the blue colour when looking at the earth from outer space?
- 3- What did man discover on the surface of the moon?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- The underlined word there refers to .....  
 a) water                      b) air                      c) moon                      d) spaceship
- 5- ..... cover and spread around the earth.  
 a) Clouds                      b) Burning gases                      c) The planet                      d) Water

**6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Cleopatra was born in Egypt in 69 BC. In 58 BC, her father was forced to leave the throne, but Cleopatra helped him regain it. After his death, Cleopatra and her brother took the throne in 51 BC, yet she was exiled by her brother, who had taken control of Egypt. So, Cleopatra created an army and joined forces with Julius Caesar. With his help, her brother was killed in 47 BC and Caesar pronounced Cleopatra queen of Egypt.

Cleopatra married Mark Antony around 35 BC, even though he was also married to a woman named Octavia. In 32 BC, war was declared upon Egypt from Octavia's brother because Antony had left Octavia for Cleopatra. Antony and Octavia divorced after that.

Cleopatra's army was defeated in the Battle of Actium, so Antony committed suicide. Saddened by Antony's death, Cleopatra poisoned herself in 31 BC.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

- 1- How old was Cleopatra when she died?
- 2- What does the underlined word "it" refer to?
- 3- Antony and Cleopatra killed themselves. Give reasons.

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- In 32 BC, war on Egypt began because .....  
 a) Antony and Octavia divorced                      b) Cleopatra married Antony  
 c) Antony married Octavia                      d) Cleopatra had control of Egypt
- 5- Cleopatra ruled Egypt for .....

a) 58 years

b) 47 years

c) 31 years

d) 16 years

**D- The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)**

**A. Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Sapt brought news of the real king. What was it?
- 2- Why did Rassendyll and Sapt send Johann back to the castle?
- 3- What did Fritz do while Sapt and Rassendyll went to Zenda?
- 4- Why was Antoinette de Mauban being kept as a prisoner of the Duke?

**B. Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:**

"Of course it's a risk, but we must have a King in Strelsau, or the city will belong to Michael within twenty-four hours. You must do it, for Ruritania!"

- 1- Who said this to whom?
- 2- Where was it said?
- 3- What does the speaker mean by the word "risk"?

**C) Find the mistake in each of the following and correct it:**

- 1- Rassendyll and Octavia took the same train to Dresden.
- 2- The King invites Rassendyll to eat with him in the hunting lodge in Strelsau.

**E- Writing**

**8) Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:**

How can people keep the environment clean?

**F- Translation**

**A. Translate into Arabic:**

Egypt has many amazing works of ancient engineering. At the south of Aswan, Abu Simbel is the site of two temples. These were carved into a cliff in 1250 BC.

**B. Translate into English:**

ما نوعية الأنشطة التي تحب أن تمارسها خلال نهاية الأسبوع؟

=====

( انتهت )

**A: LANGUAGE FUNCTIONS (8 Marks)**

**1) Respond to each of the following situations:**

- 1) I have such an expensive mobile for two reasons: First, it has a good camera. Secondly, it operates Android applications.
- 2) Alexandria has a good beach. You can also visit the Alexandria Library.
- 3) We spend the day of Sham El-nassim in parks eating salted fish and green onions.
- 4) Sorry, I was very busy.

**2) Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:**

1) Place: Company / Office / Bank. Speaker A: Manager / Interviewer. Speaker B: Applicant

Function: Expressing admiration / Expressing happiness / Inquiry / Giving information.

2) Place: Teachers' room. Speaker A: Student. Speaker B: Teacher.

Function: Offering help / Request / Inquiry / Giving information.

**B: Vocabulary and Structure**

**3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d:**

1. c) enrolling
2. b) is going to become
3. b) commuter
4. d) Unless
5. b) licence
6. d) going
7. d) alike
8. b) would have left
9. c) launch
10. c) whose
11. a) biography
12. b) had been revising
13. a) revenge
14. c) is made
15. b) transmitter
16. a) must have left

**4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:**

1. fast fluent
2. lost gained/put on
3. many much
4. Despite Although Or: we ran running
5. Credit identity
6. but because/as

**C. Reading**

**5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

1. When the earth turns away from the sun, it faces the darkness of space.
2. Because water covers three-fourths of its surface.
3. Astronauts found no air, water, plants or animals there.
4. c) moon
5. d) Water

**6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

1. 38
2. The Throne
3. Cleopatra's army was defeated in the Battle of Actium, so Antony committed suicide. Saddened by Antony's death, Cleopatra poisoned herself in 31 BC.
4. b) Cleopatra married Antony
5. d) 16 years

**D. The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)**

**7) A. Answer the following questions:**

1. He told him that the King was at the Castle of Zenda. He asked where the rest of the Six Men were and found out that they were at the Castle guarding the King.
2. As Johann worked at the Castle of Zenda, he would make the perfect spy for Rassendyll.
3. He guarded the king's bedroom to prevent anyone from entering it.
4. The Duke discovered that she had helped Rassendyll in the summer house, so he couldn't trust her.

**B. Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:**

1. Sapt to Rassendyll.
2. In the hunting lodge.
3. He meant that their plan might be discovered and their life might be in danger.

**C) Find the mistake in each of the following and correct it:**

1. Octavia Antoinette de Mauban
2. Strelsau the forest of Zenda

**E-WRITING**

8) Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

The different ways people can do to save energy

-Organizations and development (2 marks)

-Relevance of what is written to the topic provided (2 marks)

-Syntactic variety, appropriate choice of vocabulary and correct spelling (2 marks)

NB: topics out of point ( irrelevant )= one mark only

“How can people keep the environment clean?”

No one can deny that the environmental pollution is a very serious problem nowadays and has its bad effect on every individual.

On the one hand, this pollution causes great damage to the environment and all living things. There are a lot of things we can do to preserve the environment. Factories should be moved to land outside cities. A great number of trees should be planted along the sides of the roads. Trees take in carbon dioxide and give us oxygen, so they help to clean the air. The government should pass laws to reduce the number of cars on the roads. We have to spread awareness among ordinary people of the importance of preserving the environment. We must teach young children how to keep the environment clean. Preserving the environment has become a very important issue in the modern world. We must take into our consideration that this subject is a very important one to talk about as it plays a vital role in our modern society. It's agreed that we should live in a healthy environment. If we have a look at our environment nowadays, we can find that it's full of killing gases, pollution, rubbish, and noise. Look at the river Nile; it's like our litter basket. We throw everything in it. We pollute it with our hands. Cars cause air pollution as they emit dust and smog into the air. The carbon dioxide which we release into the atmosphere causes great danger. The smoke of factories is harmful to us. So, it's our duty to keep our environment clean by planting trees, reducing the amount of smoke and carbon dioxide and punishing people who pollute the environment. We should drive our cars only when we need. We should clean our homes and streets.

To sum up, keeping the environment clean isn't the responsibility of the government only, but it is also the responsibility of the individuals.

F. Translation

9) A. Translate into Arabic:

إن مصر لديها الكثير من الأعمال الهندسية القديمة المذهلة . ففي جنوب أسوان تعد مدينة أبو سمبل موقعاً لمعبدين . وهما قد تم تحتهما قبل الميلاد.

B. Translate into English:

1. A lot of money doesn't necessarily provide solutions to the problems.

2. What kind of activities do you like to do at the weekend?

Arab Republic of Egypt

Ministry of Education

Completion of Egyptian G.S.C.E in the Republic of Sudan, 2013

[First Session – Second Stage]

First Foreign Language: English (2)

Time: 3 hours

A- Language Functions

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

1- Your uncle thinks that logging on the internet is a waste of time. Disagree giving a reason.

2- A tourist wants to know the places of interest in Egypt.

3- Your neighbour thanked you because you carried his heavy bag.

4- Your friend suggests going to Al Fostat Park. Suggest somewhere else.

2) Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1- A: Look at this chart.

B: No, I can't.

A: You need a pair of glasses for reading.

2- A: Do you have anything to declare?

B: I have some gifts for my relatives.

A: Please open your case.

B: Ok, sir.

Place: .....

Speaker A: .....

Speaker B: .....

Function: .....

Place: .....

Speaker A: .....

Speaker B: .....

Function: .....

B: Vocabulary and Structure

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d:

1- The bus stopped because there was a ..... in the petrol tank.

a) leak

b) lake

c) lock

d) look

2- A ..... is a formal, organized discussion.

a) delete

b) debate

c) debit

d) departure

3- ..... cars are cheap nowadays.

a) Use

b) Using

c) Misuse

d) Used

4- The new film ..... at 6.30 pm.

a) will be starting

b) start

c) starts

d) starting

5- The second ..... of the 25th January Revolution was 3 months ago.

a) university

b) anniversary

c) universe

d) birth place

6- Many children are ..... before strangers.

a) shy

b) shameful

c) ashamed

d) shyness

7- The hard outside part of the tree is called the .....

a) root

b) leaves

c) bark

d) trunk

8- He asked me ..... I had written my report or not.

a) whether

b) weather

c) if

d) had

9- ..... he arrived early yesterday, he could have attended the conference.

a) Hadn't

b) Had

c) Unless

d) If

10- The cup is empty. Mr Hassan ..... drunk his orange juice.

- a) must have                      b) must have been                      c) can't have                      d) can't be
- 11- Eighty pounds ..... enough to buy a meal.  
a) are                      b) were                      c) is                      d) can
- 12- My uncle promises he ..... meet me at home.  
a) would                      b) will                      c) can                      d) may
- 13- I'll have finished doing my homework ..... 8 o'clock pm tomorrow.  
a) on                      b) at                      c) for                      b) by
- 14- I like that photograph on your computer .....  
a) front                      b) film                      c) glass                      d) screen
- 15- My daily ..... begins when my alarm clock goes off at 6.30.  
a) routine                      b) custom                      c) red tape                      d) traditions
- 16- The tower is one of the town's most famous .....  
a) landslides                      b) marks                      c) products                      d) landmarks

**4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:**

- 1- Alfred Farag is a famous Egyptian playwright.  
2- My sister always enjoys to read adventure stories.  
3- The foreigners, who stay ended, must leave our country.  
4- When Nasser died, thousands of people attended his funnel.  
5- Despite swimming is useful, I don't practise it.  
6- A civil servant is someone who works for the army.

**C- Reading**

**5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Japanese cars, although small in size, are very popular in America because they are very economical to maintain and fuel efficient. In general, American cars are neither economical to run nor efficient with fuel.

However, in comparison to other developed nations, gas in America is still reasonably priced. Americans, therefore, tend to clock in more miles on their cars every year because of the larger distances covered in getting from place to place. While Japan is well-connected by its excellent railroad system, America prides herself on her vast network of parkways and super-highways which connect the small towns with the bigger cities. Perhaps no country in the world has developed such as extensive highway system as the United States with many toll-free roads.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What are the Japanese cars like?  
2- Mention the drawbacks of the American cars.  
3- Give the name of the fuel which is still reasonably priced in America.

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- Both the United States and Japan are ..... countries.  
a) development                      b) developed                      c) developing                      d) underdevelopment
- 5- What does the underlined word "their" refer to?  
a) miles                      b) nations                      c) distances                      d) Americans

**6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Are you a litterbug? Do you chew gum in the streets? Do you eat on the metro? Have you ever painted graffiti on walls? Are you a jaywalker? If you answered 'yes' to any of these questions, then be careful when you visit Singapore. There's a chance to be stopped and heavily fined! But if you like clean and safe streets, an interesting culture, then Singapore could be the perfect destination for your next holiday.

Singapore is one of the world's richest cities. It is almost crime-free and spotless, steel and skyscrapers, shopping malls, top fashion houses, colourful local markets, discount shops for bargain-hunters, even air-conditioned walkways are all part of the magic of Singapore.

The majority of Singaporeans are of Chinese origin, but there are ethnic groups from India, Malaysia, Indonesia and Thailand living there. It is not surprising that the island has many interesting districts, calligraphers and fortunetellers can be found in Chinatown. Little India has spices, silverware, brassware and jasmine garlands. Malay villages display the traditional lifestyle of Malays and their arts and crafts such as batik painting and kite-making.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

- 1- How do shopkeepers keep cool in Singapore?  
2- Where can you see Calligraphers in Singapore?  
3- What does the underlined "It" refer to?

**B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- Most Singaporeans are of ..... origin.  
a) Indian                      b) Thai                      c) Chinese                      d) European
- 5- Singapore is almost .....  
a) crime-free                      b) tax-free                      c) free                      d) shop-free

**The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)**

**A. Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What kind of work does Rose suggest Rudolf should do?  
2- Why does the Duke poison the king?  
3- Why is Sapt so anxious about Rassendyll's decision to ride alone through the old town?  
4- How does Rassendyll come out of the summer house alive?

**B. Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:**

"So you'd prefer to hunt animals than do your duties in the capital."

- 1- Who says this to Rassendyll?  
2- When does the person say this?  
3- What "animal" is Rassendyll going to hunt?

**C) Find the mistake in each of the following and correct it:**

- 1- Antoinette de Mauban asks Sapt to rescue her from the Duke.  
2- The owner's wife of the inn thought that Rassendyll was the king.

**D— Writing**

8) Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"The mobile phone is a mixed blessing"

**E) Translation**

**A. Translate into Arabic:**

In the future, the world's supplies of oil will dry up. Our vehicles will need a completely new form of energy. Experts believe that solar energy may have replaced oil by the 2010.

**B. Translate into English:**

- تبذل الحكومة قصارى جهدها لتحسين العلاقات مع دول حوض النيل.  
- يجب أن نستصلح الصحراء ونحولها إلى أرض خصراء لتوفير الغذاء لكل مواطن.  
( انتهت )

**ARAB REPUBLIC OF EGYPT**

Ministry of Education

General Secondary Education Certificate Examination, 2014

Second stage – first session (New System)

First Foreign Language: English (2) Time: 3 hours

( )

اللغة الاجنبية الاولى ( ) : الانجليزية

تنبيه مهم: الاجابات المتكررة عن اسئلة الاختيار من متعدد لن تقدر و يتم تقدير الاجابة الاولى فقط

**1) Respond to each of the following situations: (4 MARKS)**

- Your classmate asks your opinion about The Prisoner of Zenda.
- You see a blind woman trying to cross the street. Offer to help her.
- A taxi driver is using his mobile phone while driving. Warn him.
- Your friend, who complained about the difficulty of the exam, got high marks. Express surprise.

**2) Mention the place, the speakers and the language functions in each of the following mini-dialogues:**

1) A: I need to get in shape.

B: Here are our exercise training programmes. Choose whatever you like.

Place: .....
Speaker A: .....
Speaker B: .....
Function: .....

2) A: Excuse me, the computer is not responding.

It is not sending the e-mail I've written. Can I use another one?

B: OK, go ahead.

Place: .....
Speaker A: .....
Speaker B: .....
Function: .....

**3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (8 MARKS)**

- I was advised .....by a doctor, but it was not possible.
 

a. seeing	b. to be seen	c. to see	d. being seen
-----------	---------------	-----------	---------------
- The space station resembles a huge wheel with .....
 

a. spots	b. spears	c. spikes	d. spokes
----------	-----------	-----------	-----------
- The diamonds are so much .....that you cannot tell the difference.
 

a. like	b. look like	c. alike	d. unlike
---------	--------------	----------	-----------
- You .....the door. It was open when I got home.
 

a. can lock	b. can't have locked	c. can have locked	d. can't lock
-------------	----------------------	--------------------	---------------
- Injuries to the head, caused by accidents, can lead to .....
 

a. amnesty	b. anemia	c. memory	d. amnesia
------------	-----------	-----------	------------
- In the 400-meter freestyle swimming, .....the gold medal surprises us.
 

a. Mona got	b. Mona is getting	c. Mona's getting	d. Mona gets
-------------	--------------------	-------------------	--------------
- Being .....means that when you get a new idea, you go immediately with it and don't stick to the same routine.
 

a. conventional	b. traditional	c. courageous	d. spontaneous
-----------------	----------------	---------------	----------------
- Movies are a form of .....for many people because they can get them away from the worries of lives.
 

a. classicism	b. escapism	c. criticism	d. enthusiasm
---------------	-------------	--------------	---------------
- No sooner .....the noise than we rushed to the spot.
 

a. had we heard	b. did we hear	c. we had heard	d. we did hear
-----------------	----------------	-----------------	----------------
- As the famous man is illiterate, a journalist is writing his .....
 

a. autography	b. autobiography	c. biography	d. biodynamics
---------------	------------------	--------------	----------------
- I don't know with .....about the loan.
 

a. who I should speak	b. whom I should speak	c. who should I speak	d. whom should I speak
-----------------------	------------------------	-----------------------	------------------------
- After working for 10 hours, I feel as I have .....nothing.
 

a. achieved	b. launched	c. succeeded	d. acknowledged
-------------	-------------	--------------	-----------------
- .....writing his own novels, Yehia Haqqi translated French and Italian literature into Arabic.
 

a. As well as	b. Because of	c. In addition	d. In spite of
---------------	---------------	----------------	----------------
- I always .....a severe headache if I spend much time on the computer.
 

a. will get	b. got	c. am getting	d. get
-------------	--------	---------------	--------
- At the wedding party yesterday, the bride said .....the happiest day of her life.
 

a. today was	b. that day was	c. yesterday had	d. that day had
--------------	-----------------	------------------	-----------------
- The police think the man, with a scar in his face, committed the crime. He is the main.....
 

a. witness	b. suspect	c. accuser	d. suspender
------------	------------	------------	--------------

**4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write it correctly: (6 MARKS)**

- Four years are a long time to spend away from family and friends.
- Nasser Lake, one of the largest man-made lake, is approximately 310 miles in length.
- Nuclear power stations produce dangerous waist.
- By 2020, eco-friendly cars run on water and sunshine.
- The actress who killed Cleopatra did not look right for the part.
- Scientists agree that it's difficult to change our humane nature.

**5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (4 MARKS)**

Good evening, ladies and gentlemen. I'd like to start by explaining that the purpose of our latest expedition to South America was not originally to study habitat loss. As some of you may know, a few years ago I published a book about the wildlife of the Amazon after having travelled extensively in the region.

The purpose of our latest trip was to follow up on the work I had done before. As time went on, however, I realized, to my horror that a number of the places I'd visited the first time were no longer tropical rainforests. The trees had been cut down, so they simply lay bare, because the rain had washed away the thin layer of the topsoil day by day and made the land completely useless.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

1. What is the effect of man on nature as you understand from the above passage?
2. How did the speaker feel about that?
3. What does the underlined verb 'washed away' mean?

**B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. The above passage can be a part of a/an.....  
a. article                      b. poster                      c. presentation                      d. interview
5. The speaker organized his latest expedition to the Amazon to...  
a. study habitat loss                      b. build on what he learnt  
c. write a book about it                      d. fertilize the soil

**6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (4 MARKS)**

Sometimes students ask to be given a list of topics which might come up in the English exam, so that they can prepare for them. As this is an English language exam, there's no strictly prescribed topical content. The best advice is to take a wide interest in topics of all kinds. However, environmental topics like global warming, pollution and world problems appear in the exam. The reason for using them is that they are of general interest, international in perspective and they affect everyone.

To help yourself feel more confident and comfortable with the topics, you can watch documentaries or current affairs programmes in English. You can also read newspapers. You might find that, you not only feel more at ease with exam topics, more fluent at using the language, but you can also have fascinating things to share with your friends after school.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Why is it inadvisable for students to be given a list of topics?
2. According to the passage, how can you be familiar with different topics?
3. What does the underlined pronoun 'them\*' refer to?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

4. Some students ask to be given a list of topics to... them in the exam.  
a. organise                      b. advise                      c. help                      d. confuse
- When you are at ease, you are.....  
a. relaxed                      b. released                      c. interested                      d. stressed

**D- THE NOVEL ( The Prisoner of Zenda) (9 MARKS)**

**7) A- Answer the following questions:**

1. What promise did Marshal Srakencz make to Rassendyll?
2. How far was Antoinette de Mauban helpful in saving the crown of Ruritania?
3. How did the pretended king try to gain his people's love?
4. Mention one moral lesson you have learnt from the story.

**B- Read the following quotation and then answer the questions:**

"I don't think they'll do anything to him if you are in the capital."

1. Who said this? To whom?
2. Why can't they do anything to the real king?
3. How did the addressee feel?

**C- Find the mistake in each sentence and correct it:**

1. Featherly is going to be an ambassador in six months' time.
2. Antoinette de Mauban called for help at the appointed time.

**E-WRITING (6 MARKS)**

**8) Write a paragraph of about (100) words about...**

Hard work is the only key to success.

**F- TRANSLATION (5 MARKS)**

**9) A- Translate into Arabic:**

Growing older is a natural process that we cannot avoid. However, some people keep their looks for a longer period than others. Their secret lies in enjoying life's pleasures and having healthy habits.

**B- Translate into English:**

- يواجه متسلقو الجبال العديد من الصعوبات التي قد تؤدي بحياتهم.  
- ألا تعتقد ان دراسة ثقافات الشعوب تساعدنا على فهمهم جيدا؟

**Model answer**

- 1) 1. In my opinion " The Prisoner of Zenda" is one of the most exciting/boring novels I have ever read.
2. Would you like me to cross the street? / I'll help you cross the street.
3. You mustn't use the mobile while driving./Using the mobile while driving may lead to accidents.
- 4-What a surprise! You've got high marks despite complaining about the difficulty of the exam.

2) 1. P: Sports club / Sports centre / Gym / Gymnasium

S A: New trainee / Customer

S B: Trainer / Coach

F: Asking for and giving information

2. P: Internet café / Cyber cafe

S A: Customer

S B: Receptionist / Shop keeper / Attendant

F: Making a complaint and offering help

3) 1-h    2-d    3-c    4-h    5-d    6-c    7-d    8-b    9-b    10-c    11-b    12-a

13-a    14-d    15-b    16-b

4) 1) are – is

2) lake - lakes

3) waist – waste

4) run - will have run

5) killed - played

6) humane - human

5) 1. Man is directly or indirectly responsible for deforestation by cutting down trees

2. He was worried / horrified

3. removed / destroyed / damaged  
 4. c) presentation 5. b) build on what he learnt  
 6) 1. Because there is no strictly prescribed topical content in English language exams.  
 2. Through watching documentaries and current affairs programmes in English or reading newspapers.  
 3. Environmental topics  
 4. c) help 5. A) relaxed  
 7) A) 1- He will Take care of Princess Flavia if he died and he will be the head of Sterlsou and princess Flavia Will be the Queen of Ruritania and he will not allow any of Duke Micheal's Men to see her.  
 2- She warned Rudolf about Duke Michael's plan to take the crown when she sent for Rudolf a letter to meet her in the Summer house.  
 3- He walked in the poor city without guards to show the poor people he trusted them and he was not afraid of them. One day he bought flowers from a poor girl with a gold coin.  
 4- Helping the people and if you get a good position in society, you will gain more responsibility.  
 B) 1- Sapt to to Rassandyll  
 2- Because they'd know that Rassendyll would stay King if they killed him.  
 3- He felt worried.

C) 1- Featherly - Sir Jacob Borrodaile

2- at the appointed time - an hour before the appointed time

8) There is no longer any doubt that hard work is the golden key to success.

On the one hand, work is the only way to achieve our hopes in life. Thus, we must do our best to get what we want. Those who work honestly reach success easily and achieve great progress. We must work hard and encourage other people to exert efforts to be successful in life. Hard work is really an honour. Work is a protection against hunger and idleness. Work is the main source of self-respect and independence. We must unite and stand as one man behind the president works in silence for the prosperity of Egypt. We should care for the language of the age represented in computer, technology, telecommunication and the internet because we cannot make any real progress without using modern technology in all fields of production. On the other hand, rationalizing the consumption is an important means for improving our living conditions. We should do our best to control the growth of population. People must accept family planning. As a result, our economic conditions will be improved. We should deepen the sense of patriotism in our youth to raise their country to high skies of honour. All of us rich or poor, men, women or children, intellectuals or illiterate, powerful or weak, politicians, students, professionals, farmers, workers, house wives, breathe the same air, drink from the same source and eat food grown in the same soil. We are all in the same lifeboat. Hence, we all have a shared destiny.

At last but not least we can come to the conclusion that hard work is needed to achieve our goals in life.

9) A) Translation into Arabic:

التقدم في السن هو عملية طبيعية لا يمكننا تجنبها ولكن بعض الناس يمكنهم الحفاظ علي مظهرهم مدة اطول من غيرهم باتباع العادات الصحية والتمتع بمباهج الحياة.

B) Translate Arabic to English

1 - Mountaineers face a lot of dangers which may lead them to death.

2 - Don't you think that the study of other peoples' cultures helps us to understand them well?

Arab Republic of Egypt

Ministry of Education

General Secondary Education Certificate Examination, 2014

[Second Session – New System]

First Foreign Language: English

Time: 3 hours

اللغة الاجنبية الاولى

(الأسئلة في أربع صفحات)

[الانجليزية]

تنبيه مهم: الاجابات المكررة من اسئلة الاختيار من متعدد لن تقدر ويتم تقدير الاجابة الاولى فقط

A- Language Functions (8 Marks)

1- Respond to each of the following situations:

1. Advise your brother who is overweight.
2. You disagree with your friend who says that all doctors are rich.
3. Your neighbour is fixing the tyre of his car. Offer to help him.
4. A friend can't decide which shirt to buy. Recommend one.

2) Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1- A: I'd like to have 5 copies of this paper, please. How much are they?

B: One pound.

Place: .....  
 Speaker A: .....  
 Speaker B: .....  
 Function: .....

2- A: I want to extend my stay here for 3 months more, please.

B: How long have you been here?

A: Two months.

Place: .....  
 Speaker A: .....  
 Speaker B: .....  
 Function: .....

B: Vocabulary and Structure

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d:

1. After the house .....painted, we furnished it.  
 a. had b. had been c. has been d. is
2. He can hardly walk. He .....be very ill.  
 a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. should
3. Electricity is produced in a .....station.  
 a. bus b. railway c. power d. space
4. Some people .....others for various reasons like attracting attention.  
 a. build b. wish c. pull d. bully
5. I won't be able to talk to you all the day tomorrow because I .....my homework.

- a. would be doing    b- would do    c- will be doing    d- may do
6. Having got a rewarding job in Alexandria, Omar decided to live there .....
- a. momentarily    b- permanently    c- permissibly    d- temporarily
7. Luxor, .....is my hometown, has a lot of ancient monuments.
- a. where    b- when    c- that    d- which
8. .... storms destroyed many places in Asia last year.
- a. Mild    b- Strong    c- Aggressive    d- Low
9. ....all his efforts to save the mountaineers, the soldier found them dead.
- a. Although    b- But for    c- As    d- Despite
10. People have .....this plant successfully in many parts of the world.
- a. grown    b- brought    c- positioned    d- explored
11. ....raining, we won't be able to finish the game.
- a- If it didn't stop    b- Unless it stops    c- Should it stop    d- If it stopped
12. The horrible accident left the car completely .....
- a- unrealizable    b- abused    c- unrecognizable    d- invisible
13. Reda objected ..... his friend's terrible accusations.
- a- for    b- from    c- of    d- to
14. I feel very sick. I wish I ..... all that chocolate yesterday.
- a- didn't eat    b- had eaten    c- hadn't eaten    d- did eat
15. I .....people who can turn a negative situation into a positive one.
- a- examine    b- heal    c- cure    d- admire
16. Don't be easily defeated. Keep .....yourself.
- a- discouraging    b- encouraging    c- demotivating    d- appointing

**4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write it correctly:**

- We are used natural gas in our cars nowadays.
- The married team went to Italy on their honeymoon.
- He might have ring me early this morning.
- Before I entered the university, I had to show my credit card.
- Youth should have an effective rule in decision making.
- The war was lost as the bad organization of the troops.

**C- READING (8 MARKS)**

**5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Global litter is an ongoing problem which many nations have to deal with. Fortunately, there are a number of possible solutions which could lead to a permanent reduction in the waste that has increased worldwide. One way would be to encourage companies to use bio-degradable packaging for their products. Bio-degradable items decompose naturally and therefore they do not add to the problem of litter. Another would be to save old metal in order to put it to further use. As a result, all discarded metal products such as vehicles water tools and machine pests could be melted down and used to make other products. The most effective method of reducing litter, however, is to educate people to recycle their household waste products. In fact, schemes such as paper, bottle and aluminum can collections have all been successful in reducing litter in many countries.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

- Suggest a title for this passage.
- How can education help to solve the litter problem?
- Why don't bio-degradable items add to the problem of litter?

**B- Choose the correct answer from a. b, c or d:**

4. The underlined word "can" means .....
- a) able to    b) a container    c) have to    d) a result
5. In the writer's opinion, the waste problem is not .....
- a) decomposed    b) ongoing    c) temporary    d) molten

**6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Maria started baking cookies when she was in grade five. By the time she reached grade seven, her cookies were locally famous. All of her friends would beg her to make her famous chocolate chip cookie almost every week.

One day a local reporter wrote a story about her and her famous cookies. The story was later picked up by National Television News. The story talked about the number of different recipes Maria could make and how tasty her cookies were. Upon seeing the story, Coco Cookies Company called Maria to see if she would sell them her famous cookie recipe.

Maria sold them oatmeal raisin recipe for twenty thousand dollars and her pudding cookie recipe for fifty thousand dollars, but she refused to sell them her chocolate chip recipe. She decided to keep this recipe and start her own company. On August 2002, she started Maria Boom Cookies.

**A. Answer the following questions:**

- When did Maria become locally famous for her cookies?
- Did Maria sell all her recipes? Why?
- How much money did Maria make from selling her recipes?

**B- Choose the correct answer from a. b, c or d:**

4. A story about Maria's famous cookies was picked up by .....
- a. a local reporter    b. her friends

c. National Television News

d. Coco Cookie Company

5. Maria is a/an .....person.

a. foolish

b. ambitious

c. envious

d. pessimistic

**D- THE NOVEL** (*The Prisoner of Zenda*) (9 MARKS)

7) **A- Answer the following questions:**

1. How were the innkeeper and her daughter different?
2. What did Sapt plan to do in case the real king was dead?
3. What news did Rassendyll receive from Strelsau?
4. How did Rassendyll get the keys to the king's prison?

**B- Read the following quotation and then answer the questions:**

"What if many men attacked the castle?"

1. Who said this? To whom?
2. On what occasion did the speaker say this?
3. What was the Duke's other plan?

**C- Find the mistake in each sentence and correct it:**

1. Sapt tells Fritz that he may let Michael in the King's bedroom.
2. The letter tells the king to come to the summer house with a friend.

**E- WRITING** (6 MARKS)

8) **Write a paragraph of about (100) words about...**

Teamwork leads to important achievements.

**F- TRANSLATION** (5 MARKS)

9) **A- Translate into Arabic:**

Creative thinking is the process by which individuals come up with new ideas. It is essential for success in life. You don't have to be good at drawing or music to be creative.

**B. Translate into English:**

- الرياضة تحمي الشباب من كثير من الأمراض النفسية والاجتماعية.  
- تظهر ثقافة الشعوب في سلوكيات أفرادها.

( انتهت الاسئلة )

Model Answer of Second Session (2014)

**1- SITUATIONS:** 1- You'd better go on a diet / You should do exercise every day.

2- I disagree with you / I don't think so.

3- Can I help you? / How can I help you?

4- You could pick the blue shirt / You could choose the white one.

**2- PLACES, SPEAKERS & FUNCTIONS:**

1- Place: Photocopy shop/printing company/stationery shop

Speaker A: a client/customer

Speaker B: a salesman/clerk/stationer

Function: Making a request / inquiry

2- Place: Alien's department

Speaker A: tourist/foreigner

Speaker B: official/clerk

Function: Making a request/asking for and giving information

**3- CHOOSE:**

1- had been 2- must 3- power 4- bully 5- will be doing 6- permanently 7- which 8- strong 9- Despite  
10- positioned 11- Unless it stops 12- unrecognizable 13- to 14- hadn't eaten 15- admire 16- encouraging

**4- FIND THE MISTAKE:**

1- are used: are using 2- team: couple 3- ring: rung 4- credit card: identity card 5- rule: role 6- as: due to

**5- READ:**

1- Recycling.

2- Education will be effective if we educate people to recycle their household waste.

3- Bio-degradable items decompose naturally.

4- container.

5- temporary.

**6- READ:**

1- She became locally famous for her cookies by the time she reached grade seven.

2- She didn't as she wanted to run her own business.

3- Seventy thousand dollars.

4- National Television News.

5- ambitious.

7- a) 1- The innkeeper supports Duke Michael and thinks he must be the ruler of Ruritania. However, her daughter supports the King.

2- Sapt plans that Rassendyll would stay as the King of Ruritania forever.

3- People of Strelsau heard that the King was badly injured, the Duke thought that the King was badly injured, and Flavia ordered the Marshal to take her to Tarlenheim.

4- Rassendyll got the keys when he killed one of the Duke's men, Bersonin.

b) 1- Rudolf Rassendyll said this to Johann.

2- The King was captured in the castle of Zenda.

3- The Duke's plan was that Detchard would kill the King and the body would be put down the pipe and the weight of his chains would keep the body under water.

**Find the mistake:**

1- may : mustn't.

2- with a friend : alone

**9- Translate into Arabic:**

**Translate into English:**

- 1- Sports protect youth from many mental/psychiatric and social disorders/illnesses.
- 2- People's culture becomes apparent/appears through its individuals' behavior.

**ARAB REPUBLIC OF EGYPT**  
**Ministry of Education**  
**General Secondary Education Certificate Examination, 2014**  
**Second stage – first session (Old System)**  
**First Foreign Language: English (2) Time: 3 hours**

تنبيه مهم: الاجابات المتكررة عن اسئلة الاختيار من متعدد لن تقدر و يتم تقدير الاجابة الاولى فقط

**1) Respond to each of the following situations:**

1. Give advice to your friend who is getting fat and wants to keep fit.
2. Warn your friend who is about to cross the road because there is a car coming very fast.
3. Your mother is busy doing the housework. You offer to help her.
4. A friend thinks that the traffic problem in Cairo can be solved in a month. Disagree and give a reason.

**2) Mention the place, the speakers and the language functions in each of the following mini-dialogues:**

1. A: Do you remember what happened?

B: No, I just remember waking up in the road.

A: How do you feel now?

B: Not too bad. Will I have to stay here tonight?

A: We will have to check you have no broken bones.

2. A: Excuse me sir. The captain has asked everyone to fasten their seatbelts.

B: Does that mean we are going to land soon?

A: Yes, in about 20 minutes.

Place: .....
Speaker A: .....
Speaker B: .....
Function: .....

Place: .....
Speaker A: .....
Speaker B: .....
Function: .....

**3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d;**

1- She arrived to the cinema late. The movie.... twenty minutes earlier.

- a. was beginning                      b. had begun                      c. has begun                      d. began

2- In very hot weather, ice-cream turns to.....

- a. water                      b. solid                      c. liquid                      d. moisture

3. Thousands of people moved slowly in the..... of the king's funeral.

- a. profession                      b. procession                      c. prediction                      d. position

4. If metal is heated, it.....

- a. will expand                      b. expand                      c. would expand                      d. expands

5. A long period of dry weather when there is not enough water is a....

- a. geyser                      b. draft                      c. rainfall                      d. drought

6. He does not want to live a very..... life. He prefers excitement.

- a. conventional                      b. risky                      c. dangerous                      d. exciting

7. That watch ..... have cost a lot of money. It is made of plastic.

- a. must                      b. might                      c. can't                      d. can

8. It is hard to walk in space because there is no.....

- a. spin                      b. gravity                      c. air                      d. waiting

9. He asked me whether..... to Cairo Tower before.

- a. have I been                      b. I have been                      c. I had been                      d. had I been

10. Shakespeare is one of the most famous.....

- a. playwrights                      b. novelists                      c. professors                      d. plays

11. I wish I..... where I left my jacket.

- a. could know                      b. knew                      c. had known                      d. know

12. Archaeologists are planning a new..... in Luxor next month.

- a. excavation                      b. extension                      c. exclamation                      d. fossil

13. She often avoids ..... with strangers as she is very shy.

- a. speaks                      b. to speak                      c. speak                      d. speaking

14. That is the school in ..... I had my primary education.

- a. which                      b. where                      c. whose                      d. when

15. The hard outside part of a tree is called the.....

- a. park                      b. bark                      c. branch                      d. brake

16. Scientists predict that mobile phones ..... smaller in the future.

- a. will make                      b. will be made                      c. will have made                      d. will have been made

**4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write it correctly:**

- 1- A criminal tries to investigate and find clues to solve crimes.
2. Although the doctor's skill, he couldn't save the patient's life.
3. Salwa wanted to know where did I buy such a nice skirt.
4. The statue was risen 40 metres up a concrete base.
5. The tourist's visit to Abu Simbel Temple was really impressed.
6. A trademark, such as a famous building, helps recognise where you are.

**5- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Plants make most food people eat. They grow almost everywhere on our planet. Their parts include roots, stems, and leaves. The root takes in water and nutrients from the soil. The stem carries water and nutrients from the roots to the other parts. The leaves take in nutrients and light. All plants produce flowers to make seeds so another plant can grow. Plants need energy to grow, replace damaged cells, get rid of waste, and reproduce. Photosynthesis is the process by which plants make food. In this process, carbon dioxide and water combine in the presence of light to form food. Plants convert energy from the sun by absorbing it through their leaves. Chlorophyll, the green colour found in plants, helps plants make food. During



1. b) had begun      2. c) liquid      3. b) procession      4. d) expands      5. d) drought  
 6. a) conventional      7. c) can't      8. b) gravity      9. c) I had been      10. a) playwrights  
 11. c) had known      12. a) excavation      13. d) speaking      14. a) which      15. b) bark  
 16. b) will be made

**4) Find the mistake:**

1. criminal detective      2. Although      Despite/In spite of      3. did I buy      I (had) bought  
 4. risen raised      5. Impressed      impressive      6. trademark      landmark

**5) Passage:**

1. During photosynthesis, leaves use light and energy to change carbon dioxide and water into food, and then oxygen is released into the air.  
 2. Plants need energy to grow, replace damaged cells, get rid of waste, and reproduce.  
 3. The stem carries water and nutrients from the roots to the other parts and the root takes in water and nutrients from the soil.  
 4. d. light, water, and carbon dioxide      5. b. Seeds and flowers

**6) Passage:**

1. When a shark dragged one of the ducklings below the surface of water.  
 2. Three days/three successive mornings.  
 3. Mike became furious and thought of finding a trick to get rid of the shark.  
 4. d. the duck and three ducklings      5. c. an unreal frog as bait

**7) The Novel**

- a) 1. In the cellar. So when the guards arrive, they would think no one was there.  
 2. because she was a guest of the Duke of Strelsau./ because Michael invited her.  
 3. they found Josef killed, Johann's mother had gone and the king was not there.  
 4. to become popular and to be near to and loved and supported by the king and be unlike the previous king.  
 b) 1. Rassendyll to the Marshal.  
 2. On their way to the old part of the town.  
 3. He was brave/He wanted to be popular/He wanted people to trust the king/ .....

- c) 1. in the hunting lodge      cellar      2. Rose      Princess Flavia

**9) A:**

تحدث/تندمج الكوارث الطبيعية عندما تدمر قوى الطبيعة البيئة ، وتؤثر على آلاف الناس سنوياً/كل عام. تشتمل على/تتضمن هذه الكوارث الزلازل والأعاصير والفيضانات والجفاف والانفجارات/الثورات البركانية والحرائق و (شدة) درجات الحرارة والبرودة الشديدة.

- B: 1) The sun not only gives us heat and light, but also harmful ultraviolet rays.  
 2) Nowadays, modern technology is used various/different fields such as, medicine, astronomy and genetic engineering.

(أى ترجمة تفيد المعنى تعتبر مقبولة)

Arab Republic of Egypt  
 Ministry of Education

General Secondary Education Certificate Examination, 2014  
 [Second Session – Old System]

First Foreign Language: English

Time: 3 hours

تنبيه مهم: الاجابات المكررة من أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد لن تقدر ويتم تقدير الاجابة الأولى فقط

**A- Language Functions (8 Marks)**

**1- Respond to each of the following situations:**

1. A friend asks you about the sort of sports you like most.  
 2. Your friend suggests going to the stadium to watch a football match. Suggest something else .  
 3. You got up late yesterday. You regret missing the early train to Alexandria.  
 4. One of your friends watched a movie on TV and found it boring. You have a different opinion.

**2) Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:**

1- A: Could you help me carry the shopping into the .house, please?

B: OK, Mum. Where shall I put it?

A: Just put the bags on the kitchen floor for the moment.

Place: .....  
 Speaker A: .....  
 Speaker B: .....  
 Function: .....

2- A: Can you turn the TV on, Mona?

B: OK, Dad. What's on?

A: Football World Cup Report from Brazil.

B: Really? I'd like to watch that, too.

Place: .....  
 Speaker A: .....  
 Speaker B: .....  
 Function: .....

**B: Vocabulary and Structure**

**3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d:**

1. When she was at secondary school; Vero won a poetry writing .....  
 a. race      b. competition      c. game      d. article  
 2. I sent her a letter, but it didn't arrive. I ..... the right address.  
 a. may write      b. must write      c. must have written      d. can't have written  
 3. The student did not do anything wrong. He is .....  
 a. innocent      b. suspect      c. guilty      d. sensible  
 4. Sara wanted to know if .....brought my grandmother a present.  
 a. I have      b. I had      c. had I      d. have I  
 5. .... power from the High Dam in Aswan produces most of Egypt's electricity.

- |             |               |                  |           |
|-------------|---------------|------------------|-----------|
| a. Hygienic | b- Scientific | c- Hydroelectric | d- Atomic |
|-------------|---------------|------------------|-----------|
6. He was extremely tired because he .....all the way to school.
- |                     |            |                     |               |
|---------------------|------------|---------------------|---------------|
| a. had been running | b- has run | c- has been running | d- is running |
|---------------------|------------|---------------------|---------------|
7. Lightening is a dangerous but natural .....
- |               |            |          |            |
|---------------|------------|----------|------------|
| a. phenomenon | b- eclipse | c- sight | d- drought |
|---------------|------------|----------|------------|
8. My intimate friend insisted on helping me ..... he was very exhausted.
- |            |             |       |             |
|------------|-------------|-------|-------------|
| a. despite | b- although | c- so | d- in spite |
|------------|-------------|-------|-------------|
9. Some tourists go to Helwan Springs to .....from skin diseases.
- |             |            |               |          |
|-------------|------------|---------------|----------|
| a. recreate | b- release | c- recuperate | d- cover |
|-------------|------------|---------------|----------|
10. By the year 2020, many projects ..... set up by the government.
- |                   |            |              |         |
|-------------------|------------|--------------|---------|
| a. will have been | b- will be | c- will have | d- will |
|-------------------|------------|--------------|---------|
11. Taqwa has seen an interesting article on the internet which she has .....onto her computer.
- |            |             |               |         |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------|
| a- written | b- received | c- downloaded | d- done |
|------------|-------------|---------------|---------|
12. Just as mother was cooking in the kitchen, father .....the newspaper in his room.
- |                     |                |               |          |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------|----------|
| a- has been reading | b- was reading | c- is reading | d- reads |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------|----------|
13. Soska tried to ..... Vero to lend her some money, but she refused.
- |            |             |            |            |
|------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| a- present | b- persuade | c- provide | d- predict |
|------------|-------------|------------|------------|
14. Try to avoid ..... spelling mistakes while writing a composition.
- |           |            |              |         |
|-----------|------------|--------------|---------|
| a- making | b- to make | c- to making | d- make |
|-----------|------------|--------------|---------|
15. Our teachers encourage us to be ..... and hard-working.
- |                |                |                  |              |
|----------------|----------------|------------------|--------------|
| a- consecutive | b- complicated | c- conscientious | d- confusing |
|----------------|----------------|------------------|--------------|
16. My sister .....at college in Cairo for three years. She comes home in Beni-Sweif every weekend.
- |       |             |             |             |
|-------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| a- is | b- has been | c- is being | d- had been |
|-------|-------------|-------------|-------------|

4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write it correctly:

- 1- The cost of living continues to raise in big cities these days.
- 2- Before his death, the rich man wrote a well to distribute his wealth.
- 3- Turpentine is used for brushing our teeth.
- 4- On his arrive to the airport, he realised that he had forgotten his passport.
- 5- A: How much do you go to the cinema? B: Twice a month.
- 6- The teacher gave us a ten-minutes break to revise our writing.

#### C- READING (8 MARKS)

5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The true wonder of Alexandria, as part of the ancient world, is still being discovered. It was more than just the location of the world-famous library. Now, ancient Alexandria, lost to us, is buried under hundreds of modern buildings. Egyptologists were convinced that its Royal Quarter must be buried under the sea where Antony and Cleopatra held court and Cleopatra killed herself rather than be taken a prisoner to Rome. For a decade, a team of divers, led by Goddio, a famous founder of the European Institute for Underwater Archaeology, searched the harbour for "the city under sea." In 1996, pictures of the harbour floor, taken from Goddio's search ship, showed the fallen columns, blocks with Greek inscriptions, and a small statue head thought to be of either Antony or Caesarion the son of Cleopatra and Julius Caesar. Till now, the head has not been identified with absolute certainty.

A- Answer the following questions:

- 1- According to the passage, why is Alexandria a true wonder?
- 2- What results did Goddio and his team reach after their efforts?
- 3- What was the Royal Quarter thought to be the location for?

B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- Cleopatra put an end to her life because .....

a) she was a prisoner in the Royal Quarter	b) she didn't want to be captured
c) Antony killed himself in the Royal Quartet	d) the court was held in the Royal Quarter

- 5- The statue head .....

a) definitely belonged to Mark Antony	b) certainly belonged to Julius Caesar
c) hasn't been recognised to whom it belonged	d) absolutely belonged to Caesarion, Caesar's son

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

One day a tea contractor, Mr. Chin, was working on an estate in Africa with his wife and son. He noticed a slight movement in the jungle, so he stopped to watch for a moment. To his astonishment, a large tiger appeared and came towards him. The tea contractor was a very brave man. He told his wife and son to run towards a nearby road, while he stopped to fight the tiger with a knife.

The tiger sprang at Chin and knocked him down, but he managed wound it with his knife. As a result, the tiger and Chin knocked each other unconscious. Luckily, for Chin, a friend, called Mike, heard the noise of the fight and came to investigate. He found Chin and carried him to the road. Then he stopped a car and sent the injured man to a hospital, where he eventually recovered.

A- Answer the following questions:

1. Who won the fight: Chin or the tiger? Why?

2. What harm did Chin and the tiger cause to one another?

3. How could Chin save his wife and son?

**B- Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:**

4- Mike could save his friend by .....

a) hearing the noise of the fight

b) coming to investigate the fight

c) carrying Chin to hospital

d) getting him in a car to hospital

5- The underlined word "he" refers to .....

a) Chin's friend

b) Chin's son

c) the tea contractor

d) Mike

**D- THE NOVEL (The Prisoner of Zenda) (9 MARKS)**

**7) A- Answer the following questions:**

1. What did Rassendyll do on his way to Princess Flavia's palace?

2. Why was Johan's mother locked in the cellar with the king?

3. Why didn't Sapt shoot Michael when he was going to Zenda?

4. What happened to the future king after eating the poisoned cakes?

**B- Read the following quotation and then answer the questions:**

"Me? That's impossible! People would realise I'm not the king!"

1. Who said this? To whom?

2. Where was it said?

3. What does the speaker mean by "impossible"?

**C- Find the mistake in each sentence and correct it:**

1. Duke Michael put the key in the secret door and Rassendyll went back inside the palace.

2. Sapt took the key of the city gate from the girl after giving her a flower and a signed form from the King.

**E- WRITING (6 MARKS)**

8) Write a letter to a friend in London telling him/her about your plans for next year.

**F- TRANSLATION (5 MARKS)**

**9) A- Translate into Arabic:**

Thomas Edison invented a machine called the phonograph when he was experimenting to improve the efficiency of a telegraph transmitter. The device had two needles: one for recording and one for playback.

**B. Translate into English:**

- يعتبر العمل الثنائي الخاص أحد الطرق الناجحة في تدريس اللغات الأجنبية.  
- بناء السدود أمر ضروري للتحكم في الأنهار التي تسبب الفيضانات.

( انتهت الاسئلة )

**Modal Answer (قديم 2014)**

**1- Respond to each of the following situations: ( 4 marks )**

1- I like football most.

2- What about going to the cinema?

3- If only I hadn't got up late yesterday, I wouldn't have missed the early train to Alex.

4- I don't agree with you. This movie is interesting.

**2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues :**

1- Place : Outside a family home

Speaker A : a mother

Speaker B : daughter/ son

Function : asking for help and agreeing

2- Place : home

Speaker A : a father

Speaker B : daughter

Function : request / agreeing/ inquiring & responding

**3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ( 8 marks )**

1- b

2- d

3- a

4- b

5- c

6- a

7- a

8- b

9- c

10- a

11- c

12- b

13- b

14- a

15- c

16- b

**4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly: (6 marks)**

1- The cost of living continues to rise in big cities these days.

2- Before his death, the rich man wrote a will to distribute his wealth.

3- Toothpaste is used for brushing our teeth.

4- On his arrival to the airport, he realised that he had forgotten his passport.

5- A: How often do you go to the cinema? B: Twice a month.

6- The teacher gave us a ten-minute break to revise our writing.

**5- Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (4 marks)**

1- The true wonder of Alexandria, as part of the ancient world. It was more than just the location of the world-famous library.

2- Pictures of the harbour floor, taken from Goddio's search ship, showed the fallen columns, blocks with Greek inscriptions, and a small statue head thought to be of either Antony or Caesarion the son of Cleopatra and Julius Caesar.

3- Royal Quarter must be buried under the sea where Antony and Cleopatra held court and Cleopatra killed herself rather than be taken a prisoner to Rome.

4- b) she didn't want to be captured

5- c) hasn't been recognised to whom it belonged

**6- Read the following passage, then answer the questions: ( 4 marks )**

1- No one won the fight as the tiger and Chin knocked each other unconscious.

2- The tiger knocked Chin down, but he managed wound it with his knife. As a result, the tiger and Chin knocked each other unconscious.

3- He told his wife and son to run towards a nearby road, while he stopped to fight the tiger with a knife.

4- d) getting him in a car to hospital

5- c) the tea contractor

**7- (A) Answer the following questions: (4 marks)**

1. He stopped to buy flowers from a poor young girl with a gold coin.
2. Because she overheard them and knew about their plan.
3. Because it wouldn't have helped the king at that time.
4. His face was red and he was breathing heavily.

(B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions: (3 marks)

1. Rassendyll to Sapt
2. In the hunting lodge, in the room next to the dining room.
3. Rassendyll's going to Strelsau to be crowned/to replace the real king until the coronation is over.

(C) Find the mistake in each of the following and correct it: (2 marks)

1. Duke Michael Sapt
2. a flower a coin

8- Write a letter..... (6 marks)

9- (A) Translation into Arabic: (3 marks)

اخترع توماس إديسون آلة تسمى الفونوغراف بينما كان يجرى تجاربه لتحسين كفاءة جهاز إرسال التلغراف وكان الجهاز يتكون من إبرتين واحده للتسجيل وأخرى لإعادة التشغيل.

(B) Translate into English: (2 marks)

- 1- Private pair work is one of the successful methods for teaching foreign languages.
- 2- Building dams is necessary for controlling rivers that cause floods.

### Sudan 2014 First Session

#### A- Language Functions

1) Respond to each of the following situations:

1. Someone told you that your football team added new players. You are interested.
2. Your father inquires about why you put on weight.
3. Your car stopped suddenly, deduce something.
4. Your sister offered to help you with your heavy books.

2) Mention the place, the speakers and language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1) A: What time does our flight leave, Dad?

B: At midday. We've got lots of time.

A: Are you sure we have our tickets?

B: Yes, I'm sure. Don't worry.

2) A: Well, your application has been successful.

B: That's great! Thank you for your good words.

A: You will be working with us soon.

Place: .....
Speaker A: .....
Speaker B: .....
Function: .....

Place: .....
Speaker A: .....
Speaker B: .....
Function: .....

#### B- VOCABULARY & STRUCTURES

3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm afraid, you did your best but your .....in the project isn't good enough.

- a) community
- b) sound
- c) neighborhood
- d) achievement

2. He asked me if I knew that .....

- a) had she been ill
- b) she has been ill
- c) she had been ill
- d) has she been ill

3. My little sister is always ....., she can't speak to other people.

- a) shy
- b) private
- c) loud
- d) advanced

4. Petrol and oil .....as much as they are today.

- a) isn't used
- b) won't be used
- c) hasn't been used
- d) wasn't used

5. I'm eating less than usual as I don't want to .....more weight.

- a) gain
- b) lose
- c) promise
- d) allow

6. Huda admitted .....my pen without asking me.

- a) borrow
- b) borrowed
- c) borrows
- d) borrowing

7. I imagine .....doing weightless sports in the outer space as the gravity is zero.

- a) himself
- b) ourselves
- c) myself
- d) itself

8. The accident .....at 8:00 when everyone was on their way to work.

- a) occurred
- b) took
- c) came
- d) caused

9. There's water all over the floor. You .....to turn off the shower.

- a) must forget
- b) must have forgotten
- c) can't have forgotten
- d) can forget

10. The Chinese built the Great Wall to stop the enemy .....

- a) breath
- b) commerce
- c) invasion
- d) track

11. While .....Egypt, tourists enjoy sightseeing.

- a) visiting
- b) was visiting
- c) visited
- d) was visited

12. It is known that nuclear power produces dangerous .....

- a) case
- b) waste
- c) gift
- d) discovery

13. If you look at the sun, you .....damage your sight.

- a) will
- b) would
- c) would have
- d) will have

14. All countries have their own traditional .....music.

- a) folk
- b) water
- c) mission
- d) solid

15. How .....of Egyptian's electricity is produced from the High Dam.

- a) many
- b) much
- c) often
- d) long

16. To be .....you must be good at your job.

- a) employable
- b) non-renewable
- c) petroleum
- d) admission

4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write it correctly:

1. Our flat, where is in the fifth floor, overlooks the Nile.
2. The unusual weather causes droughts in some places and foods in others.
3. I wish I can write more quickly.
4. Abu Simbel is a temple which is cared into a cliff.
5. Although arriving at school early, he was punished.
6. Yehia Haqqi wrote in a new way and developed a new stick in writing.

### C- READING

#### 5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

More than a million people travel to the United States to start new lives every year, and if they are arriving in New York, one of the first sites that they will see is the Statue of Liberty. It stands on Liberty Island, near Manhattan in New York. The Statue of Liberty is not only the tallest statue in America; it is also one of the most recognizable American symbols. While most people like the Statue of Liberty today, it was not like that in the past. As it was being built in the 1870s, many Americans were against the project. Some thought that it was designed and built by the French. They believed that American monuments should be designed and constructed by Americans. Others felt that the statue wasn't a gift because the Americans paid a lot of money for it.

#### A. Answer the following questions:

1. When was the Statue of Liberty built?
2. Why were most Americans against the Statue of Liberty?
3. What is Manhattan famous for?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Some Americans felt that the statue wasn't a gift because it was ..... .  
a) expensive                      b) fat                      c) neat                      d) cheap
5. The underlined word "recognizable" means ..... .  
a) you can't see it easily                      b) you can know it easily  
c) you can carry it easily                      d) you can wash it easily

#### 6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

We were standing on the bridge, trying to catch some fish for lunch when a small red plane flew almost directly above our heads. We could even see the pilot's face. I felt rather annoyed. I think he's in trouble. Samy said, "His engine is making a strange noise." "Well, we can't do anything." I said. "We can't even phone from here." We were on a holiday boat and there was no mobile signal. We could follow the plane down the river. Samy said, "Come on! Let's go!" I must admit I liked the idea. There weren't many fish in that part of the river and I was bored. We dropped our fishing lines and rushed towards our boat. Luckily, the boat engine started at once and soon we saw the plane and the pilot. We also saw some people with cameras. They were making a film!

#### A. Answer the following questions:

1. What happened while you and Samy were fishing?
2. Why was the pilot in trouble?
3. Do you think it was a good idea to stop fishing and go to see the plane? Why?

#### B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. We were lucky because ..... .  
a) there wasn't lunch                      b) the plane was above our heads  
c) they were on the fish                      d) the boat engine started at once
5. We were on a holiday boat and there was no mobile ..... .  
a) sign                      b) song                      c) signal                      d) sons

### D- The Novel

#### 7) A- Answer the following questions"

1. Why doesn't Rudolf Rassendyll work?
2. What does Sapt plan to do if the real king is dead?
3. Describe the room and the pipe where the real king is kept.
4. Why does the Duke poison the King?

#### B. Read the following quotation and answer the questions:

"It would be very useful for Michael if you disappeared. And if you disappear, the game's over."

1. Who says this to whom?
2. Why does the speaker say this?
3. What game would be over if the person disappeared?

#### C) Find the mistake in each of the following and correct it:

1. Of the Six Men, four of them were Ruritarians.
2. The letter from Antoinette tells the King to come to the summer house with a friend.

### E- WRITING

#### 8) Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"The advantages and disadvantages of travelling to foreign countries."

### F- TRANSLATION

#### 9) A. Translate into Arabic:

It is better not to waste water. Many careless people use water foolishly. It is the responsibility of parents and teachers to teach students to save water.

**B. Translate into English:**

- إن الخيال العلمي طريقة جيدة للكتابة عن المستقبل.  
- التعلم عن بعد من التقنيات الحديثة التي تساعد المرء على التعلم.

**ARAB REPUBLIC OF EGYPT**

**Ministry of Education General Secondary Education Certificate Examination, 2015**

**[New System - Second Stage - First Session]**

**First Foreign Language: ENGLISH (2)**

**Time: 3 Hours**

**1- Respond to each of the following situations:**

- 1- Nour says that manual work is an exercise in itself. You think she's right.
- 2- Menna asks you about today's songs. What do you think?
- 3- You are asked, "Why were you absent yesterday?"
- 4- Your friend asks you how to make boiled eggs.

**2- Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:-**

1- A: How many litres, sir?

B: Only fifteen.

A: The tank, please.

B: How much.

A: Thirty-nine pounds.

2- A: Do you have any previous experience in accounting?

B: Yes, I have worked for two years in "The Integrated Company".

A: Leave your phone number and we'll contact you.

B: Certainly. Thank you, sir.

**3- Choose the correct answers from a, b, c or d:**

1- The Prime minister is going on an urgent .....to Japan tomorrow.

- a) mission                      b) mansion                      c) mention                      d) motion

2- You don't need .....add more salt to this dish.

- a) for                              b) on                              c) to                              d) of

3- .....out! A bus is coming.

- a) Put                              b) Set                              c) Watch                      d) Bring

4- Dalia regrets not finishing her work yesterday. She wishes she .....it.

- a) finished                      b) has finished                      c) finishes                      d) had finished

5- Some people keep on destroying the environment by throwing factory .....in rivers and seas.

- a) waist                              b) waste                              c) paste                              d) haste

6- The plane to Brazil ..... off tomorrow at 6:00 am.

- a) is taking                      b) takes                              c) will take                      d) is going to take

7- I really admire Charles Dickens as a novelist as his writing .....is unique.

- a) behaviour                      b) attitude                              c) style                              d) conduct

8- The lazy student admitted .....his homework at home.

- a) leaving                              b) to leave                              c) left                              d) leaves

9- He isn't ..... for this special work.

- a) magnified                      b) quantified                              c) liquefied                      d) qualified

10- I can't remember where I had left my mobile phone. I'm not sure. I ..... it at home.

- a) must have left                      b) might have left                      c) can leave                      d) must leave

11- You should .....your hand if you want to answer the teacher's question.

- a) arouse                              b) arise                              c) raise                              d) rise

12- .....his old age, he is still energetic.

- a) Despite                              b) Although                              c) While                              d) Because of

13- An eclipse of the sun is a strange natural .....

- a) superstition                      b) phenomenon                              c) tradition                      d) custom

14- Unless he .....me, I wouldn't have been able to finish the work quickly and accurately.

- a) had helped                      b) has helped                              c) helped                              d) helps

15- She was in .....of the company during my absence.

- a) role                              b) charge                              c) part                              d) responsibility

16- I don't like .....at.

- a) people laughing                      b) having laughed                      c) being laughed                      d) people laughed

**4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:**

1- What do you expect them to doing in this critical situation?

2- Lots of people stood in the street to watch the Queen's profession.

3- She wanted to know why had he been angry the day before.

4- Man's intention of space was a remarkable success about fifty years ago.

5- Shakespeare, who plays are well known worldwide, is a great playwright.

6- The Pyramids and the Sphinx are among the most trademarks in Egypt.

**5- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

You are at a restaurant and you bite into a chilli pepper. Your eyes start to water. You cough. You sweat. Your lips, tongue and mouth burn. It feels like your head is going to explode. Your only thought is: "Help! How can I put out this fire?" What makes it burn is a chemical called capsaicin (or capsicum). Capsaicin is the oil found in no other plant except hot pepper. It is colourless and odourless. But if you put one drop of that oil into 100,000 drops of water and drank it, you would still feel the heat. Here is why it feels like a fire in your mouth: your tongue has sensors that cause you feel pain from high temperatures. These sensors make you feel such pain. Some kinds of chilli pepper are hotter than others. Therefore, extra heat has to do with the type – not the amount – of capsaicin.

**A) Give short answers to the following questions:**

- 1- What is the effect of capsaicin on the human body?
- 2- According to the passage, what is capsaicin?
- 3- What does the extra heat depend on?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:**

- 4- "your eyes start to water" means to .....  
 a) have no tears    b) become full of tears    c) wash with water    d) be washed with water
- 5- The tongue sensors help to .....  
 a) sense high temperatures    b) eat chilli pepper  
 c) produce extra heat    d) give a burning sensation

**6- Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

A Japanese professor has produced evidence to show that computer games can have a bad effect on children. Many parents and grandparents have been saying this for years, but they were largely ignored, being regarded as technophobes. Parental worries about computer games often relate to their effect on their children's health and on their own social skills. They feel that they should be outdoors; getting exercise and enjoying the fresh air while playing with their friends. Since many of them usually play by themselves, they live rather isolated lives, with little opportunity to interact with other people. As a result, they may be very poor at communication. Parents are also worried in case the violence of many of the games will cause their children to become more aggressive and violent themselves. This anxiety also applies to television which often shows scenes of extreme cruelty.

**A) Give short answers to the following questions:**

- 1- Why are many parents and grandparents regarded as technophobes?
- 2- What does the underlined word "themselves" refer to?
- 3- How far do you agree with the evidence produced by the Japanese professor? Why?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d:**

- 4- "poor at communication" means .....  
 a) unable to use their mobile phones    b) clever at making fewer phone calls  
 c) having difficulty in socializing with others    d) having the ability to speak in public
- 5- Violence, cruelty and aggressiveness can be caused by .....  
 a) computer programmes    b) parental worries  
 c) technophobes    d) TV scenes and computer games

### 7- The Novel 'The Prisoner of Zenda'

**a) Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What happened to the king after eating the cakes?
- 2- Why was Sapt so worried about Rassendyll's decision to ride alone through the old town?
- 3- How did Rupert deceive Rassendyll?
- 4- What does Rassendyll learn from his adventures?

**b) read the following quotation and then answer the following questions:**

"Listen, if you're a man, you can save the king. Go back and pretend to be him."

- 1- Who says this? To whom?
- 2- Where was it said?
- 3- What would happen if that person refused to replace the king?

**c) Find the mistake in each sentence and correct it:**

- 1- The real king asked Detchard why his brother hadn't rewarded him.
- 2- Sapt wanted to punish Antoinette for helping Rassendyll.

**8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words on:**

"Has reading become an old-fashioned habit?"

**9- a) Translate into Arabic:**

Tourism is a cultural aspect where people of different languages and cultures meet. They can exchange ideas about many issues and interests. It further helps deepen peaceful coexistence among nations.

**b) Translate into English:**

- ينبغي علينا بذل المزيد من الجهد لحماية البيئة من التلوث السمعي والبصري.  
 - يحب الصغار والكبار قراءة القصص البوليسية لأنها شيقة ومسلية.

### Model answer

**1) Situations:**

1. You are right./I agree with you./I think so. ....
2. I like them very much./I don't like them.
3. Because I was ..... /Because of .....
4. First of all, put the eggs ..... then, .....

**2) Speakers:**

**1. Place:** a petrol/gas station

**Speaker A:** an attendant/a worker at a petrol station

**Speaker B:** a motorist/customer

**Function:** offering help/request

**2. Place:** a company/firm/corporation **Speaker A:** an interviewer

**Speaker B:** an interviewee

**Function:** asking and answering personal questions

**3) Choose:**

- 1. a) mission      2. C) to      3. c) Watch      4. d) had finished      5. b) waste      6. b) takes
- 7. c) style      8. a) leaving      9. d) qualified      10. b) might have left      11. c) raise
- 12. a) Despite      13. b) phenomenon      14. a) had helped      15. b) charge      16. c) being laughed

**4) Mistakes:**

- 1. doing do      2. profession      procession/coronation      3. had he he had
- 4. intention      invasion/exploration      5. who whose      6. trademarks      landmarks/monuments

**5) Passage:**

- 1. Your eyes start to water. You cough. You sweat. Your lips, tongue and mouth burn. It feels like your head is going to explode.
- 2. It is the oil found in hot pepper.
- 3. It depends on the type of the capsaicin, not the amount.
- 4. b. become full of tears.      5. A. sense high temperatures

**6) Passage:**

- 1. because they are always worried about their children's spending much time playing computer games.
- 2. (Their) children.
- 3. (Any reasonable answer stating a reason(s) is accepted)
- 4. c. having difficulty in socializing with others      5. d. TV scenes and computer games

**7) The novel**

- a. 1. He was lying on the floor. His face was red and he was breathing heavily./He was poisoned./He fell unconscious.
- 2. because Duke Michael wouldn't like him to be popular with his people./he might be in danger./he might be killed./people might hurt him.
- 3. When he asked Rassendyll to shake hands, he suddenly stabbed him in his shoulder with a knife.
- 4. He learnt that a person with a position in society has responsibilities, but even without a position in society, we all have a duty to help other people when we can.
- b. 1. Colonel Sapt to Roudolf Rassendyll.
- 2. In the hunting lodge in Zenda.
- 3. Duke Michael would take the crown and would kill the king or put him in prison/he would be the king.
- c. 1. rewarded      killed      2. Sapt      Rupert

**8) Paragraph**

Any relevant, well-structured and grammatically correct paragraph will be accepted.

**Scoring criteria**

- Organization and development. (2 marks)
- Relevance of what is written to the topic provided. (2 marks)
- Syntactic variety, appropriate choice of vocabulary and correct spelling. (2 marks)

**9) a. Translate into Arabic:**

تعتبر/تعد السياحة من المظاهر الثقافية/أحد المظاهر الثقافية، حيث يتلاقى الناس/الأفراد من مختلف اللغات والثقافات، فهم يتبادلون الأفكار حول الكثير من القضايا والاهتمامات/المصالح. إضافة/بالإضافة إلى أنها تساعد على تعميق التعايش السلمي بين الأمم/الشعوب.

**b. Translate into English:**

- 1. We should make/exert more effort to protect/for protecting the environment from/against audio and visual pollution.
- 2. Children /The young and the adults love/like reading detective stories because/as/since they are interesting and amusing.

**ARAB REPUBLIC OF EGYPT**

Ministry of Education General Secondary Education Certificate Examination, **2015**

[Old System - Second Stage - **First Session**]

First Foreign Language: **ENGLISH (2)**

Time: 3 Hours

**a. Respond to each of the following situations:**

- 1- A farmer asks you what life is like in the desert.
- 2- Someone asks for advice about how to help the poor.
- 3- Warn your younger sister before she touches a hot plate.
- 4- Your teacher asks for your opinion about what will happen if the storm reaches your area.

**b. Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:-**

- 1- A: Excuse me. I need to find out about medical research in Egypt for a university project.
- B: All the information on medicine is on the first floor.
- A: Thank you. Can I take any of the books out?
- B: Yes, just bring them to the front desk.

Place: .....
Speaker A: .....
Speaker B: .....
Function: .....

2- A: Why do you want to work for us?

B: The salary is good and I am well qualified for this kind of work.

A: We will examine your application and let you know.

B: I am sure you will be satisfied.

Place: .....

Speaker A: .....

Speaker B : .....

Function: .....

c. Choose the correct answers from a, b, c or d:

- 1- He .....an eye doctor when he finishes his graduate studies. This is his plan.  
a) would be                      b) is                                      c) is going to be                      d) has been
- 2- My friend looked with joy .....my new computer game.  
a) of                                      b) at                                      c) but                                      d) to
- 3- I would have taken you to the theatre, .....you didn't ask me.  
a) despite                              b) so                                      c) but                                      d) while
- 4- A .....is someone who produces books, newspapers and magazines.  
a) lawyer                              b) publisher                              c) pioneer                              d) driver
- 5- My sister wants to play a traditional musical .....  
a) tool                                      b) machine                              c) instrument                              d) device
- 6- I .....my ambition when I became an engineer.  
a) won                                      b) got                                      c) made                                      d) achieved
- 7- My brother is really .....about all kinds of books. He likes reading.  
a) enthusiastic                              b) interested                              c) keen                                      d) active
- 8- If it .....so heavily, we would not have had floods.  
a) didn't rain                              b) hadn't rained                              c) rained                                      d) rain
- 9- Winning the first prize last year .....Ali very happy.  
a) will have made                              b) must have made                              c) can't make                              d) mustn't make
- 10- It is .....to drive carelessly specially in towns and cities.  
a) responsible                              b) reasonable                              c) irresponsible                              d) respectable
- 11- Noha phoned me while the dinner .....  
a) was cooking                              b) cooked                                      c) cooks                                      d) was being cooked
- 12- Ahmed promised that he .....me as soon as the plane lands.  
a) will phone                              b) would phone                              c) phoned                                      d) phones
- 13- You are now in a bad need of money. I wish you .....so much money.  
a) aren't spending                              b) don't spend                              c) hadn't spent                              d) haven't spent
- 14- People in space are almost .....; it must be very difficult to stand still out there.  
a) weighty                                      b) weightless                                      c) heavy                                      d) heavily
- 15- .....is the force produced when two things push against each other.  
a) Power                                      b) Energy                                      c) Pressure                                      d) Tension
- 16- I have worked very hard this year, so I'm hoping for ..... at work.  
a) permission                              b) promotion                              c) persuasion                              d) prescription

d. Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

- 1- I fixed the lake in the petrol tank.
- 2- Economics were my best subject last year.
- 3- She started making experiments by herself.
- 4- Today, paper, plastic and glass can all be reinvented.
- 5- She asked him what he had been doing for he left school.
- 6- Amal, who father is a well-known writer, is my best friend at school.

e. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People tell lies for several reasons, but the most common one is carelessness. They do not do what they are supposed to do and fear punishment. This makes them tell lies. People may tell lies because they want to seem more intelligent, successful or more powerful. A lot of people tell lies simply to get people's attention. More people do this to avoid being made fun of. All those who have this evil quality share a belief that a lie may make a person good and that the truth may harm him. They rarely think of people's trust or their own honour. Those people should realise that human relationships are built on trust not suspicion, and that lying may bring temporary gain, but it will certainly bring permanent shame. The common saying "Nobody believes a liar" actually means that nobody respects a liar.

A) Give short answers to the following questions:

- 1- Why do people tell lies? Give two reasons.
- 2- What does "Nobody believes in a liar" mean?
- 3- Give a suitable title for the passage.

B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- Avoiding lying will bring .....  
a) honour                                      b) pain                                      c) shame                                      d) loss
- 5- Human relationships are built on .....  
a) evil                                      b) conflict                                      c) respect                                      d) suspicion

f. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

One day, three thieves saw a farmer coming back from the market and carrying a goat on his back. They made a plan to get the goat for themselves. They waited for him at three different places on his way. The first thief stopped him and said, "Why are you carrying a dog on your back?" When the farmer said that it was a goat not a dog, the thief laughed loudly and walked away. The second thief stopped the farmer and asked him the same question and the farmer said that he carried a goat not a dog. The smart farmer understood the thieves' plan and decided to deceive them. He hid his goat in a



4. Rassendyll teaches the king a moral lesson that can't be forgotten. The king should take care of his people's problems by living among them/try to solve their problems. A real king is made by self-sacrifice and self-denial.

b. 1. Rupert Hentzau says this to Rassendyll.

2. He is talking about Duke Michael.

3. He will help Rassendyll to attack the castle. Rupert Hentzau will decide the time but sapt, Fritz, Michael and the real king must all die, the Rassendyll will remain the king and Rupert will have a reward.

c. 1. tired poisoned 2. leg arm

**8) Paragraph**

Any relevant, well-structured and grammatically correct paragraph will be accepted.

Scoring criteria

- Organization and development. (2 marks)
- Relevance of what is written to the topic provided. (2 marks)
- Syntactic variety, appropriate choice of vocabulary and correct spelling. (2 marks)

**9) a. Translate into Arabic:**

أحيانا لا نستطيع مقاومة الاستماع إلى الموسيقى، فالموسيقى مصدر متعة كما أنها تستخدم لعلاج بعض الأمراض البدنية والذهنية، وهي عادة تجعل الناس يستمتعون بما يعملون.

**b. Translate into English:**

1. Computers and the internet enable us to get in touch with/communicate with people all over the world/every part of the world.

2. Knowledge is power. It is what sets human beings apart/distinguishes human beings/mankind from other creatures.

**Ministry of Education  
General Secondary Education Certificate Examination, 2015  
[New System – Second Stage - Second Session]  
A- Language Functions (8 Marks)**

**1- Respond to each of the following situations:**

- 1- Your friend feels bored and asks you what to do. Suggest.
- 2- You regret not visiting your grandfather at the hospital.
- 3- Hady asks you about your favourite actor/actress.
- 4- Your sister is using a very sharp knife. Warn her.

**2) Mention the place, the speakers and the language function in each of the following two mini-dialogues:**

- 1- A: It's one a.m. You should turn off the computer.  
B: I only play games after finishing my homework.  
A: You have to go to bed right now.  
B: All right, I will.

Place: .....
Speaker A: .....
Speaker B : .....
Function: .....

- 2- A: Where is your homework?  
B: I didn't do it.  
A: Why?  
B: I was ill yesterday.

Place: .....
Speaker A: .....
Speaker B : .....
Function: .....

**B: Vocabulary and Structure (14 Marks)**

**3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c and d:**

- 1- When exposed to high temperature, rocks are found in a ..... form.
 

a. frozen	b. boiling	c. molten	d. melting
-----------	------------	-----------	------------
- 2- In my opinion, the population of Egypt .....by 20 % next year.
 

a. is increasing	b. has increased	c. is going to increase	d. will increase
------------------	------------------	-------------------------	------------------
- 3- Everyone has the .....to lead a healthy life.
 

a. rite	b. correction	c. correlation	d. right
---------	---------------	----------------	----------
- 4- After the death of her husband, the poor woman was thought .....from amnesia.
 

a. is suffered	b. to have suffered	c. suffer	d. to be suffered
----------------	---------------------	-----------	-------------------
- 5- To make our economy flourish, all the Egyptian .....should be of high quality.
 

a. productivity	b. protection	c. produce	d. products
-----------------	---------------	------------	-------------
- 6- If he hadn't helped me with some money, I .....able to buy a new flat.
 

a. wouldn't be	b. will be	c. would have been	d. wouldn't have been
----------------	------------	--------------------	-----------------------
- 7- A/An .....is a person who represents his country all over the world.
 

a. musician	b. actor	c. diplomat	d. journalist
-------------	----------	-------------	---------------
- 8- Having .....the shopping, mother started to prepare lunch.
 

a. do	b. she did	c. she does	d. done
-------	------------	-------------	---------
- 9- A .....is a device for catching mice.
 

a. trick	b. machine	c. truck	d. mousetrap
----------	------------	----------	--------------
- 10- My father .....go to USA next summer. He hasn't decided yet.
 

a. must	b. might	c. need	d. should
---------	----------	---------	-----------
- 11- We can calculate the age of a tree by counting its ..... .
 

a. leaves	b. rings	c. nuts	d. roots
-----------	----------	---------	----------
- 12- I don't know who the problem .....by.
 

a. was solved	b. solve	c. solves	d. was solving
---------------	----------	-----------	----------------
- 13- We visit our village ..... . We go there every month.
 

a. particularly	b. regularly	c. gradually	d. practically
-----------------	--------------	--------------	----------------
- 14- I still remember .....Alexandria when I was young. It was really amazing.
 

a. to visit	b. being visited	c. visit	d. visiting
-------------	------------------	----------	-------------
- 15- How on .....is she shouting at me?
 

a. earth	b. the ground	c. floor	d. the earth
----------	---------------	----------	--------------

16- As my mother was exhausted, she fell asleep while .....TV.

- a. was watching                      b. had watched                      c. watching                      d. being watched

4) Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write it correctly:

- 1- The car whose she wanted had been sold.
- 2- The whether forecast says it is going to rain tomorrow.
- 3- The murderer believed that his life was on danger.
- 4- He speaks English easily and smoothly. He is frequent.
- 5- The reason for his disease is not knew.
- 6- Noha used a sharp tool to cure her name on the rock.

**C- Reading (8 Marks)**

5) Read the following passage, then answer the questions;

Recent research has revealed that passive smoking, even over short periods of time, can temporarily damage a non-smoker's heart. Experts have been warning for some time of the health risks caused by inhaling the smoke from other people's cigarettes, but the average person does not yet seem to be very aware of such risks. People in most countries know, for example, that smoking can lead to respiratory diseases, including serious diseases, such as lung cancer. However, their knowledge of the consequences of passive smoking seems very limited. Most people who do not smoke regard smoking as an antisocial habit which causes them some discomfort, rather than as a danger to their health. They may always sit, when possible, in the no-smoking areas of restaurants or other public places. Still, many of them do not yet realise that being in the company of smokers can make them actually ill.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What are the dangers of passive smoking?
- 2- What does the underlined word "antisocial" mean?
- 3- How do non-smokers try to avoid the bad effects of smoking?

**B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- Respiratory diseases are .....
- a. diseases affecting the chest                      b. mental diseases
- c. stomach diseases                      d. inhalation of smoke
- 5- According to the writer, "to be in the company of smokers" is to .....
- a. object to smoky atmosphere                      b. smoke in others' company
- c. sit among smokers                      d. smoke with others

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You would like to take good photographs of real-life situations but you have few ideas for pictures. I suggest you look around you. The everyday world is full of scenes being played by an ever-changing group of actors. The main requirement for any photographer has little to do with technical matters. You must develop an awareness of the world around you, and you should learn to notice when a situation may develop to a point where you will be able to take a good picture.

Not every shot is going to be a winner. If you look at the works of even the best photographers, you will notice that dozens of pictures have to be taken only because they lead up to the successful shot of a situation that the photographer has obviously been observing through the lens. You may find that you have taken one or two pictures after the right moment has passed.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Looking at the work of the best photographers might be helpful. How?
- 2- What does the photographer have to do to get good shots?
- 3- "Not every shot is going to be a winner." Why?

**B- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- 4- The real-life photography depends on .....
- a. searching for unusual situations                      b. being able to tell when a good situation is
- c. having a camera which is easy and quick to use                      d. being highly skilled in camera techniques
- 5- This text may be taken from a/an .....
- a. history of photography                      b. advertisement for films
- c. camera instruction booklet                      d. introduction to photography

**D. The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda) (9 Marks)**

7) **A- Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Where was the real King locked up?
- 2- Why did Rassendyll have to be careful while talking with Flavia?
- 3- What did Rassendyll and Sapt do when they discovered that the real King had disappeared?
- 4- How did Johann's weak character help Rassendyll?

**B- Read the following quotation and then answer the questions:**

"That's not normal. No one goes into the building without the permission of Rupert or Michael."

- 1- Who said this to whom?
- 2- What wasn't normal at the Castle of Zenda?
- 3- Why wasn't anyone allowed into the building?

**C- Find the mistake in each sentence and correct it:**

- 1- Rassendyll was pleased as Rupert had escaped.
- 2- Sapt believed that Rassendyll wanted to be King forever.

**E. Writing (6 Marks)**

8) Write a paragraph of about 100 words on:

"We sometimes have to do things we do not enjoy doing."

## F. Translation (5 Marks)

### 9) A- Translate into Arabic:

Most people agree that there is no place like home. It is more than just a place to stay in. It is part of one's life and personality.

### B- Translate into English:

- عُقدت الكثير من المؤتمرات الدولية لمحاولة الوصول إلى حل لمشكلة  
- عليك تناول وجبات متوازنة بها العناصر الغذائية الضرورية للصحة الجيدة.  
[انتهت الأسئلة]

### Model answer

#### 1) Respond to each of the following situations:

- 1- What about .../How about .... /Why don't you .....
- 2- I'm sorry for not visiting .../I wish I had visited ./ I regret not visiting .....
- 3- I'm a big fan of ...../I like/love .....so much/ .....
- 4- Be careful!/Pay attention!/Take care!/Look out!/Watch out!/This knife is very sharp.

#### 2) Mention the place, the speakers and the language function of each of the following two mini-dialogues:

- 1- Place: house/home      Speaker A: father/mother ...      Speaker B: son/daughter

Function: giving advice

- 2- Place: classroom/school      Speaker A: a teacher      Speaker B: a student/pupil

Function: asking for & giving reasons/explanations

#### 3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- c 2- d 3- d 4- b 5- d 6- d 7- c 8- d 9- d 10- b 11- b 12- a 13- b) to stay 14- d 15- a 16- c

#### 4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

- 1- whose---which/that      2- whether---weather      3- on---in  
4- frequent---fluent      5- knew---known      6- cure---carve/cut

#### 5- A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- It can temporarily damage a non-smoker's heart.
- 2- It means: rejected by the society/disapproved by the people.
- 3- They may always sit, when possible, in the no-smoking areas of restaurants or other public places.

#### B. Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- a      5- c

#### 6- A. Answer the following questions:

- 1- It might make you more experienced and less frustrated/ .....
- 2- He/She has to develop an awareness of the world around him/her and he/she should learn to notice when a situation may develop to a point where he/she will be able to take a good picture.
- 3- .....because photographers take dozens of pictures in order to get one successful shot of a situation.

#### B. Choose the correct Answer from a, b, c or d:

- 4- b      5- d

#### D- The Novel (The Prisoner of Zenda)

#### 7- A) Answer the following questions:

- 1- He was locked up in the hunting lodge in Zenda./at the Castle of Zenda.
- 2- .because he needed her to trust him and didn't want her to realise he wasn't the real King.
- 3- They decided to collect every soldier in Strlesau and catch Michael before the king was killed.
- 4- To know if he was feeling well or not after the coronation. Johann worked for Michael because he feared him not because he liked him. He seemed happy to tell Rassendyll Michael's secrets, so Rassendyll used him as a perfect spy.

#### B) Read the following quotation, then answer the questions:

- 1- Colonel Sapt to Rudolf Rassendyll.
- 2- The drawbridge was nearly always kept up to prevent anyone from going into the building.
- 3- No one was allowed into the building because the King was held prisoner there. They didn't want anyone to try to set the King free.

#### C- Find the mistake in each sentence and correct it:

- 1- pleased ----- angry      2- Sapt ----- Michael

#### 8- Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"A training course that you would like to take"

- Organizations and development (2 marks)
- Relevance of what is written to the topic provided (2 marks)
- Syntactic variety, appropriate choice of vocabulary and correct spelling (2 marks)

#### 9- a) Translate into English:

يتفق غالبية / معظم الناس على أنه ليس هناك مكان أفضل من البيت ، فهو أكثر من كونه مجرد مكان للسكنى / للإقامة ، بل إنه جزء من حياة المرء وشخصيته .

#### b) Translate into Arabic:

- 1- A lot of international conferences have been held in order to / to reach a solution to / for the problem of global warming.
- 2- You should eat/have balanced meals which contain the nutritional elements / nutrients essential / necessary for good health.



4- The underlined word "them" refers to .....

- a. children                      b. people                      c. stories                      d. characters

5- In the passage children's stories are popular among the young and the old because .....

- a. You can always find a good character                      b. You can always tell the young from the old  
c. You can always save a little girl                      d. You can always tell the good from the bad

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In ancient China, when an artist created an original piece of art, he went to the governor of his town and claimed a reward for his skills. The governor placed it at the door of his palace for a whole year. If no one could find a fault with it, the artist would be rewarded. But if any defect was discovered, the work would be returned and no reward would be given. One day a man brought a painting of an ear of corn and a bird sitting on it. A thousand people saw it and thought it was perfect. On the last day of the year, an old man came and asked, "How can a bird sit on an ear of corn without making it bend?" The observation was right and the artist wasn't rewarded. To receive such a prize, an artist had to be careful with every detail of his work.

A. Give short answers to the following questions:

1- How long did an artist have to wait to get a reward?

2- Why was the artist in the story not rewarded?

3- What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4- In ancient China, to receive a reward an artist had to create .....

- a. a painting of a bird                      b. an ear of corn  
c. a perfect work of art                      d. a beautiful work of art

5- The word "original" in the passage means .....

- a. unique                      b. faulty                      c. imitated                      d. imperfect

**D The novel (The Prisoner of Zenda) (9 Marks)**

7) A. Answer the following questions:

1- What kind of work did Rose suggest Rudolf should do?

2- Did Princess Flavia know that this was not the real King? What did she say about him?

3- How did Rassendyll act when he made mistakes?

4- Why did they send Johann back to the castle?

B. Read the following quotation and then answer the questions:

"Dead! That's good. Then I'm your leader now. Put down your weapons and do as I say."

1- Who said this to whom?

2- Where was the speaker?

3- Did the people obey the order? What happened?

C. Find the mistake in each sentence and correct it:

1- The rich people who had always lived well would support the Duke.

2- Michael and Max thought they should go to the village to learn the truth.

**E-Writing (6 Marks)**

8) Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:

"A training course that you would like to take"

**F- Translation (5 Marks)**

9) A. Translate into Arabic:

Television and social websites are responsible for the declining interest in reading. Some time has to be devoted to reading. This way we gain more knowledge and acquire better attitudes.

B. Translate into English:

- العمل الجماعي يوفر الوقت ويضاعف الإنتاج.  
- هل تـ

[انتهت الأسئلة]

### Model answer

1) Respond to each of the following situations:

1- I think you are right. / Nothing is more important than education.

2- In my opinion the teacher's job is not easy./ If you ask me, it's a hard job.

3- Thanks a lot. That's very kind of you.

4- Let's visit the zoo. / What about visiting the Book Fair?

NB: Any other reasonable answers are acceptable

2) Mention the place, the speakers and the language function of each of the following two mini-dialogues:

1- Place: company/factory                      Speaker A: interviewer/manager                      Speaker B: a job applicant/interviewee

Function: making suggestion / thanking

2- Place: a school / faculty

Speaker A: a teacher

Speaker B: a student

Function: asking for & giving opinion

3- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1- b) was                      2- d) invisible                      3- b) will have been replaced

5- b) revising                      6- c) harmful                      7- d) will                      8- b) instruments

9- b) grows                      10- a) encourage                      11- c) who                      12- b) renewable

13- c) to stay                      14- d) finance                      15- c) should                      16- c) droughts

4- Find the mistake in each of the following sentences, then write them correctly:

1-who---which    2-learned---taught/educated    3-get---had got    4-away---down    5-well---will    6- used---use

5- A. Answer the following questions:

1- They realize that life is not that simple. People have both good and bad qualities.

2- I think the best ones are those which take into account that people have both good and bad qualities and that justice doesn't always win./ don't deceive the reader.

3- As they can't understand how evil can go unpunished or good unrewarded.





a) majority

b) most

c) minority

d) average

**D- The Novel**

**7) A- Answer the following questions”**

1. What does the owner of the inn think of Michael, Duke of Strelsau?
2. What do you think the message “all is well” means?
3. Why did the men who come to the hunting lodge have spades with them?
4. Who was Sir. Jacob Borrodaile?

**B. Read the following quotation and answer the questions:**

“It would be very useful for Michael if you disappeared. And if you disappear, the game’s over.”

1. Who says this to whom?
2. Why does the speaker say this?
3. What game would be over if the person disappeared?

**C) Find the mistake in each of the following and correct it:**

1. Rupert accused Antoinette of writing secret letters to Sapt.
2. Michael’s mother was not loyal, so he wanted to marry Flavia.

**E- WRITING**

**8) Write a paragraph of about 100 words about:**

“Great projects provide job opportunities and better living conditions for all Egyptians.”

**F- TRANSLATION**

**9) A. Translate into Arabic:**

Good citizens are those who devote themselves, their time and their money for the welfare of their families. They are also ready to sacrifice themselves when their country is in danger.

**B. Translate into English:**

- تتصدر الحوادث الجوية دائما عناوين الصحف لأنها لا تبقى أحداً علي قيد الحياة.  
- يؤدي السلام الي التقدم والرخاء بينما تؤدي الحروب الي الدمار والمجاعات.

*And say my Lord involve me in knowledge*

*With best wishes Mr. M. A.*

**01018126191**